

VOL. 2



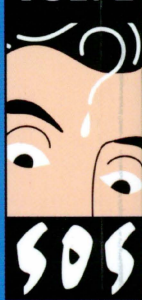
**Jeroen Bosch, editor**

# SECRETS OF OPENING SURPRISES



**Tired of main lines? Shock your opponent with an SOS!**

NEW IN CHESS



**SECRETS OF OPENING SURPRISES**  
 is a periodical, published twice a year,  
 especially suitable for those chess players  
 who dislike studying large quantities of  
 stuffy theory and who rarely play  
 a novelty at move nineteen.

**Praise for SOS, Volume 1:**

"Unusual and almost supernatural opening ideas."  
**LUBOSH KAVALEK IN THE WASHINGTON POST**



"New moves as early as move five are  
 always attractive. Every line mentioned has  
 a tactical and/or strategic justification  
 and can be used with confidence."

**JEREMY SILMAN, AUTHOR OF HOW TO REASSESS YOUR CHESS**



"Tricky opening ideas, not much to learn,  
 surprise value and lots of fun!"

**GLENN FLEAR IN YEARBOOK 71**



"Bosch's analysis is generally strong (he is an IM),  
 a quality which contrasts with the poor work often  
 done by enthusiastic advocates of strange and/or  
 irregular moves. I think that readers on most levels,  
 say, from intermediate player to master,  
 will get something of value out of this book"

**JOHN WATSON AT TWIC BOOK REVIEWS**



"Boy, are some of these ideas surprising!  
 No matter what you play, you will find  
 something new and exciting here."

**CHESTODAY**



"A refreshing change from the usual dreary technical  
 works. Definitely not for the bovine."

**NIGEL SHORT IN THE DAILY TELEGRAPH**

**Editor:**

**Jeroen Bosch**

**Contributors to this volume:**

**Ian Rogers, Sergei Movsesian,  
 Jonathan Rowson, Michal Krasenkow,  
 Dimitri Reinderman, Alexander Beliavsky,  
 Mihai Grünberg, Maxim Notkin, Glenn Flear,  
 Dorian Rogozenko, Igor Glek  
 and Jeroen Bosch.**

**NEW IN CHESS**

ISBN 90 5691 132 5



9 789056 911324

## **SOS – Secrets of Opening Surprises 2**

# **SECRETS OF OPENING SURPRISES**

## **2**

**Edited by  
JEROEN BOSCH**

**2004 New In Chess – The Netherlands**

© 2004 New In Chess

Published by New In Chess, Alkmaar, The Netherlands

[www.newinchess.com](http://www.newinchess.com)

Appears twice a year

Previous versions of Chapters 5, 8, 11 and 13 have appeared  
in New In Chess Magazine.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission from the publisher.

Cover design and lay-out: Steven Boland

Drawing on frontcover: Zander Dekker

Printing: A-D Druk BV, Zeist, The Netherlands

Production: Joop de Groot

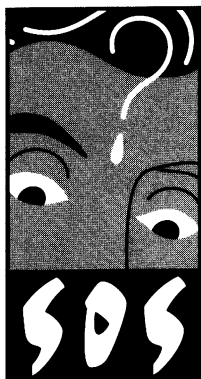
Proofreading: René Olthof

Printed in the Netherlands

ISBN 90-5691-132-5

# Contents

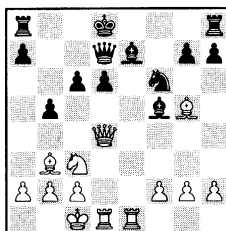
1	Jeroen Bosch	The SOS Files	9
2	Ian Rogers	Refining Fischer's Plan	17
3	Alexander Beliavsky	Destroying the Benoni Wall	23
4	Maxim Notkin	When I was Young	28
5	Jeroen Bosch	Morozevich's Pet Line in the Albin	38
6	Michal Krasenkow	The Dutch in the English?	45
7	Dorian Rogozenko	Follow the Experts	52
8	Jeroen Bosch	Let's wait and see: 3...h6 in the French	63
9	Sergei Movsesian	Play like a Beginner	72
10	Dimitri Reinderman	The Haberditz Variation	78
11	Jeroen Bosch	Get the Edge on the Budapest	83
12	Igor Glek	Gambit Lines in the Glek Variation	91
13	Jeroen Bosch	Beating the Van Geet	102
14	Dorian Rogozenko	A Latvian Speciality vs the Dragon	108
15	Mihai Grünberg	It is Better Playing White	116
16	Glenn Flear	The Solid but Tricky Fianchetto Spanish	121
17	Jonathan Rowson	The Improved Nadeau	133



**CHAPTER 1 – page 9**

*Jeroen Bosch*

**The SOS Files**

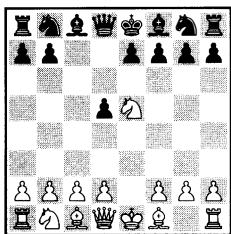


Winning the SOS Competition

**CHAPTER 2 – page 17**

*Ian Rogers*

**Refining Fischer's Plan**

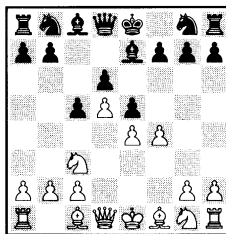


Caro-Kann Exchange with 4.♘e5

**CHAPTER 3 – page 23**

*Alexander Beliavsky*

**Destroying the Benoni Wall**

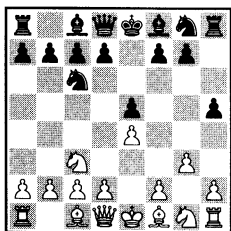


Alekhine's 5.f4

**CHAPTER 4 – page 28**

*Maxim Notkin*

**When I was Young**

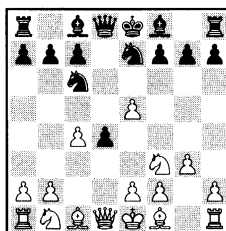


3...h5 against the Vienna

**CHAPTER 5 – page 38**

*Jeroen Bosch*

**Morozevich's Pet Line in the Albin**

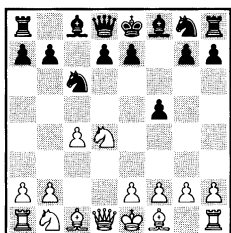


The Sideline 5...♘g7

**CHAPTER 6** – page 45

*Michal Krasenkow*

**The Dutch in the English?**

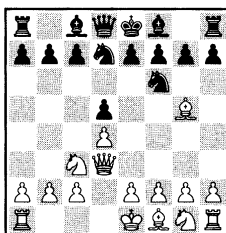


Combining ...c5 and ...f5

**CHAPTER 7** – page 52

*Dorian Rogozenko*

**Follow the Experts**

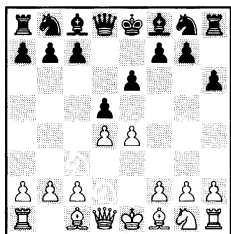


4. ♖d3 in the Richter-Veresov

**CHAPTER 8** – page 63

*Jeroen Bosch*

**Let's wait and see: 3...h6 in the French**

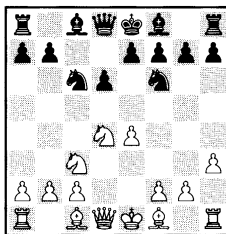


3...h6 – sur place!

**CHAPTER 9** – page 72

*Sergei Movsesian*

**Play like a Beginner**

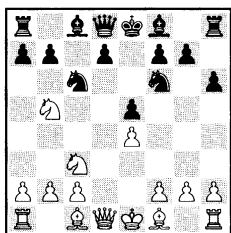


6.h3 against the Classical Sicilian

**CHAPTER 10** – page 78

*Dimitri Reinderman*

**The Haberditz Variation**

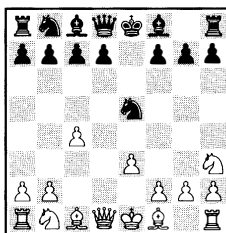


Play 6...h6 in the 'Sveshnikov'

**CHAPTER 11** – page 83

*Jeroen Bosch*

**Get the Edge on the Budapest**



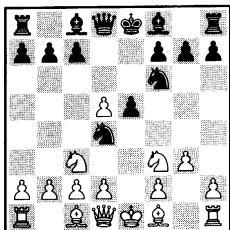
Play 5. ♘h3!?



**CHAPTER 12** – page 91

*Igor Glek*

**Gambit Lines in the Glek Variation**

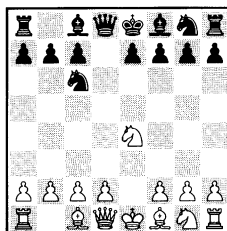


Is this the Belgrade Gambit?

**CHAPTER 13** – page 102

*Jeroen Bosch*

**Beating the Van Geet**

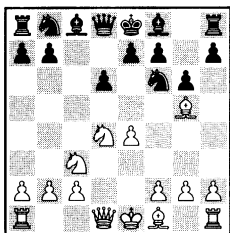


1. ♖c3 d5 2. e4 dxe4 3. ♗xe4 ♘c6

**CHAPTER 14** – page 108

*Dorian Rogozenko*

**A Latvian Speciality vs the Dragon**

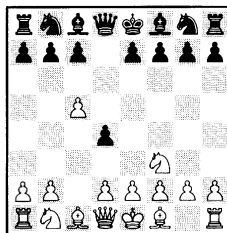


Bishop Aggression 6. ♖g5 and 7. ♖b5

**CHAPTER 15** – page 116

*Mihai Grünberg*

**It is Better Playing White**

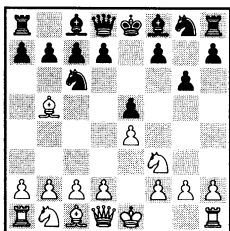


1. ♗f3 d5 2. c4 d4 3. c5!?

**CHAPTER 16** – page 121

*Glenn Flear*

**The Solid but Tricky Fianchetto Spanish**

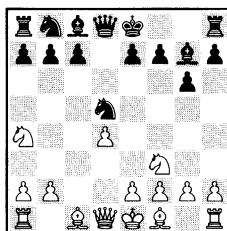


1. e4 e5 2. ♗f3 ♘c6 3. ♖b5 g6!?

**CHAPTER 17** – page 133

*Jonathan Rowson*

**The Improved Nadanian**



6. ♗a4 in the Grünfeld

# CHAPTER 1

## *Jeroen Bosch*

# The SOS Files

### Grandmaster Draw in the Gunsberg

(SOS-1, Chapter 1, p.10)

From this book onwards, we shall keep you informed on previous SOS ideas – making sure that you keep up with important SOS victories, and the occasional mishap!

Let's start with a grandmaster draw in the Gunsberg Variation.

□ **Stefan Kindermann**

■ **Zoltan Gyimesi**

Austria tt 2003/04

**1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♘c3 ♘f6 4.a3 d5**

Please note that 4...g6 5.♘xe5!? corresponds rather nicely with our appetizer in Chapter 12. In Nevanlinna-Nyysti, Finland tt 2003/04, Black returned the piece after 5...♘xe5 6.d4 ♘c6 7.d5 ♘g7 8.dxc6 bxc6 9.♘d3 with even chances. Interestingly, Nyysti had previously lost a game with 7...♘b8 8.e5 ♘g8 9.d6. This was against Magnus Carlsen. Yes, the Norwegian boy wonder sure knows his SOS!

White was better in Kuzmicz-Nemeth, Balatonlelle 2004, after 4...d6 5.d4 ♘g4 6.d5 ♘d4 7.♘e3 ♘xf3+ 8.gxf3 ♘d7 9.♖d2 c6 10.♘c4 ♖c8 11.dxc6 bxc6 12.f4 exf4 13.♘xf4.

**5.♘b5 ♘xe4 6.♖e2**

The principal move is 6.♘xe5 when Skovgaard-Jaeger, Copenhagen 2004, turned out badly for Black after 6...♖f6 7.♘d3N (7.♘f3) 7...♘xc3 8.dxc3 ♘e6 9.♘f4 ♖c8 10.♖d2 a6 11.♘xc6+ bxc6 12.♘b4 ♘xb4 13.axb4 0-0 14.0-0±.

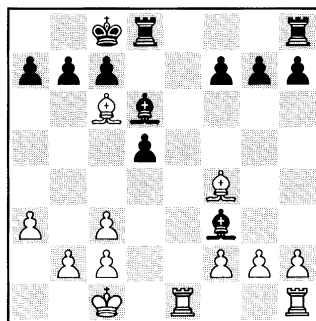
Instead of 6...♖f6, the move 6...♖g5 may lead to wild complications: 7.♘xc6 ♖xg2 8.♖f1 ♘xc3 (I am rather looking forward to a future contribution following 8...a6 9.♘d5 axb5 10.♘xc7+ ♘d7 11.♘xa8 ♘xc6 and in this theoretical position (with reversed colours) the question is how useful the additional move a3 is) 9.dxc3 a6 10.♖e2+ ♖e4 11.♖xe4+ dxe4 12.♘d4+!? (12.♘a4 ♘d7) 12...axb5 13.♘xb5 ♘d7 14.♘f4 ♘c6 15.c4 and White had the slightly better chances in Morgan-Schroeder, cr 2003/04. This was a reader submission for our SOS contest.

**6...♘xc3 7.♖xe5+ ♖e7!**

This equalizing move was already given in SOS-1. Our present grandmaster 'duel' confirms this verdict. Instead 7...♘e7 8.♖xc3 0-0 9.♘xc6 bxc6 10.♖xc6 was better for White in Kristjansson-Azarov, Goa 2002.

**8.dxc3 ♘d7 9.♖xe7+ ♘e7 10.♘f4 0-0-0 11.0-0-0 ♘g4 12.♖de1 ♘xf3 13.♘xc6 ♘d6**

A nice intermediate move that makes for an esthetic diagram.



14.♙xd6 ♘xg2 15.♖hg1 ♗xd6  
16.♖xg2 bxc6 17.♖xg7 ♖f6 18.♖e7  
♖f8= 19.♖xh7 ♖xf2 20.♚d1 ½-½

### An SOS is Stronger Than You Think

(SOS-1, Chapter 2, p.22)

It is with great pleasure that I present the following three games, correcting erroneous judgments from SOS-1. In all cases our SOS line turns out to contain even more bite than I thought.

- John Bartholomew
  - Gennady Zaichik
- Philadelphia 2004

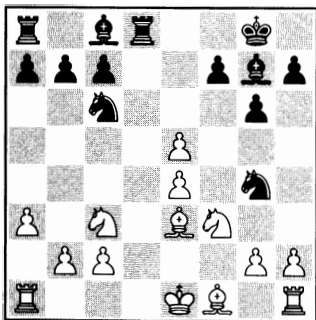
1.e4 g6 2.d4 ♙g7 3.♗c3 d6 4.f4 ♗f6  
5.a3 0-0 6.♗f3 ♗c6 7.♙e3

I incorrectly gave this a dubious mark in SOS-1, preferring instead 7.♙e2 or 7.e5.

7...e5 8.dxe5 dxe5 9.♖xd8!

Going for this ending is much better than 9.fxe5 ♗g4 10.♙c5 ♗cxe5! from the game Sepp-Fridman, Riga 1995 (via transposition). This was the game upon which I had based my previous judgement.

9...♖xd8 10.fxe5 ♗g4



Structurally there is nothing wrong with Black, but White has some annoying time-gaining moves at his disposal.

11.♙g5 ♖f8 12.♗d5 ♗cxe5

Here 12...♗gxe5 was stronger with the tactical point 13.♗xc7 (13.0-0-0 seems to preserve an edge) 13...♗xf3+ 14.gxf3 ♙xb2.

13.♗xc7 ♖b8

Of course, now 13...♗xf3+ 14.gxf3 leaves the g4-knight en prise.

14.♙e7 Winning the exchange. 14...♗c6

15.♙xf8 ♙xb2! The best chance.

16.♖b1 ♙c3+ 17.♙e2 ♙xf8 18.♗d5

Giving back the exchange for a superior ending. 18...♗d4+

19.♙d3! ♗f2+

20.♙xc3 ♗xf3 21.gxf3 ♗xh1 22.♙d4!

♗f2 23.h4 ♗h3 24.c4 h6 25.a4 g5

26.♙xh3! ♙xh3 27.hxg5 ♙d7

27...hxg5 28.♖h1 ♙c8 29.♖h8+ ♙g7

30.♖d8 wins a piece. 28.gxh6 ♙xa4

29.♖g1 f6 30.♖g7 ♙e8 31.♗xf6 ♖d8+

32.♙c3 ♙f7 33.♗h7+ 1-0

### More a3 Fun

(SOS-1, Chapter 3, p.29)

The following game sees White effortlessly outplaying a GM in a vintage a3-SOS.

- Davor Rogic
  - Drazen Sermek
- Croatia tt 2004

1.e4 c5 2.♗f3 e6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗xd4  
♗f6 5.♗c3 ♗c6 6.a3

Well, here's that funny move again. In SOS-1 we argued that given the right opponent this could be an apt move order weapon to outfox the chap on the other side of the board. Sermek decides upon one of the more principal approaches, questioning the usefulness of 6.a3.

6...d5 7.exd5

My main line in SOS-1 was 7.♙b5 ♙d7 8.exd5 exd5 9.0-0 ♙e7 10.h3 0-0 11.♗f3, as played by Nigel Short.

7...exd5 8.♙e2 ♙e7 9.0-0 0-0

I considered this position to be equal (and therefore recommended 7.♙b5). However, it seems that I underestimated the strength of this particular SOS – in the game Rogic demonstrates that White's position is a lot easier to handle than Black's.

**10.♙f4 a6?!**

To avoid a knight jump to b5.

**11.♙f3 ♖xd4?! 12.♗xd4**

White has pressure against the isolated pawn and is better.

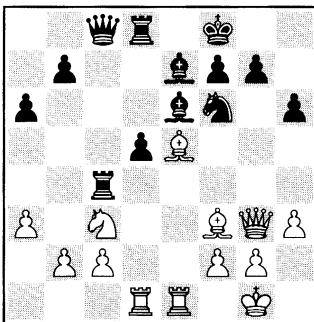
**12...♙e6 13.♖ad1 ♖c8 14.♖fe1 ♗d7 15.h3 ♖fd8 16.♙e5!**

Again White is increasing the pressure. With rather simple means Rogic has obtained superior chances.

**16...♖c4 17.♗d2 ♗c8 18.♗g5!**

Directing her majesty towards the enemy zone. This move underlines the coordination of White's forces. Because of the tactical problems on square g7, the isolated pawn is now difficult to defend.

**18...h6 19.♗g3 ♙f8**



**20.♙xd5! ♖xd5**

20...♙xd5 21.♖xd5 loses on the spot.

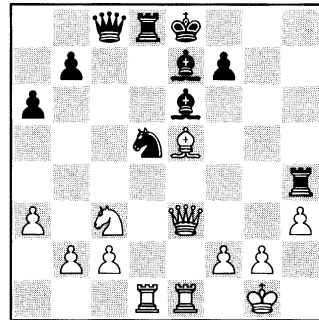
**21.♗xg7+ ♙e8 22.♗h8+ ♙d7 23.♗xh6**

With three pawns and an attack for the piece.

**23...♖h4**

23...♗c6 is more stubborn.

**24.♗e3 ♙e8**



**25.♗g3?**

White misses a good chance: 25.♖xd5! ♙xd5 (25...♖xd5! 26.♖xd5 ♙xd5 27.♙f6 ♖e4 28.♗xe4 ♙xe4 29.♖xe4 ♗xc2 30.♖xe7+ ♙f8±) 26.♖xd5 ♖xd5 27.♙f6+.

**25...♖h6? 26.♗g8+?**

Again a sac on d5 was possible: 26.♖xd5! ♖xd5 27.♖xd5 and now 27...♙xd5 28.♙f6 wins material in all lines: 28...♖xf6 (28...♙e6 29.♗g8+ ♙d7 (29...♙f8 30.♙g7) 30.♗xc8+ ♙xc8 31.♙xe7) 29.♗g8+ ♙d7 30.♖xe7+.

**26...♙d7 27.♗g7**

Here 27.♖xd5 ♖xg8 28.♖b6+ ♙c6 29.♖xc8 ♙xc8 favours Black.

**27...♙f8 28.♗g3 ♙e8 29.♖e4 ♖g6**

**30.♗f3 ♗xc2 31.♖c1**

and possibly in time trouble the players agreed to a most illogical result: draw.

### A Simple SOS Win

(SOS-1, Chapter 12, p.98)

It is hard to face the Sveshnikov. The next game is a major confidence booster for our SOS recipe.

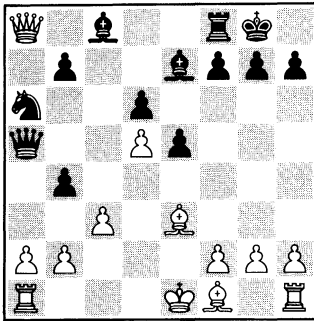
□ Ioannis Papadopoulos

■ Robert Ris

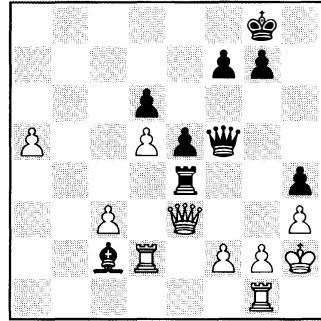
Aghia Pelagia 2004

**1.e4 c5 2.♖f3 ♖c6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♖xd4 ♖f6 5.♖c3 e5 6.♖db5 d6 7.♖d5**

♟xd5 8.exd5 ♘b8 9.♖f3 a6 10.♖a3  
 ♙e7 11.♙d2 11...♙g5!?. 11...0-0 12.♙b4  
 axb5 12...♙g4!?. 13.♖xa8 ♘a6 14.♙d2  
 ♖b6 15.♙e3 ♖a5+ 16.c3 b4



33.a4 ♙c2! 34.a5 ♗e4 Black has strong  
 counterplay. 35.♖f3 ♗f4 36.♖e2 ♗e4  
 37.♖f3 Or 37.♗xc2 ♗xe2 38.♗xe2 ♖f4+  
 39.♙h1 ♖a4. 37...♗f4 38.♖e3 ♗e4



All this can be found on page 102 of SOS-1,  
 where I now stated that White should force  
 the draw with 17.♗c1 since Black has excel-  
 lent compensation after 17.♙d2 bxc3  
 18.♙xc3 ♖xd5. After 17.♗c1, Paragua-  
 Poliakov, Goa 2002, was drawn after  
 17...♖xa2 18.cxb4 ♖xb2 19.♗xc8 ♖xb4+  
 20.♙d2 ♖b1+ 21.♙c1 ♖b4+ 22.♙d2.

In our present game Mr Papadopoulos play-  
 ed the much simpler and much stronger  
**17.♙xa6!N**

which wins almost outright!

**17...bxc3**

Here 17...bxa6 18.♖c6 just wins.

**18.0-0**

Castling into safety, White remains an ex-  
 change up.

**18...bxa6** 18...cxb2 19.♗ab1 bxa6  
 20.♗xb2±. **19.bxc3 ♙f5** 20.♖b7 ♙f6  
 21.♖b3 h5 22.♗fd1 ♖c7 23.♗ac1  
 ♗b8 24.♖a4 h4 25.h3 ♖d8 26.♖xa6  
 ♙g5 27.♖e2 ♗a8 28.♗d2 ♗a4  
**29.♙xg5** 29.c4. **29...♖xg5** 30.♖e3 ♗f4  
**31.♙h2** Here White could have won with  
 31.a4! ♙e4 32.f3 ♙xf3 33.♗e1!. However,  
 not 33.a5? ♙xg2 34.♗xg2? ♗f1+ and it is  
 Black who wins. **31...♙e4** 32.♗g1 ♖f5

**39.a6 ♗xe3** 40.fxe3 ♖d7? A mistake  
 in timetrouble, correct was 40...♖c8!.

**41.♗a1!**

**1-0**

White wins after 41...♙a4 42.♗b2.

### The ...♙d6 Saga Continues

(SOS-1, Chapter 4, p.40)

I recommended 4...♙d6 as a means to play  
 for a win as Black against the Spanish Four  
 Knights. I soon experienced the truth of that  
 remark myself, see below.

□ Saidali Yuldashev

■ Sergey Kayumov

Abu Dhabi 2004

**1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♟c3 ♟f6 4.♙b5  
 ♙d6 5.d3**

Jan Pinski has suggested the creative 5.g4 in  
 his book *The Four Knights* (2003). He diffu-  
 sed his own bomb though, by remarking that  
 Black is OK after 5...♙c5!.

More normal is 5.0-0 0-0 and now:

● 6.d4 (this pseudo-active move gives  
 Black all the chances) 6...♟xd4 7.♟xd4  
 exd4 8.♖xd4 ♗e8! (preparing 9...♙e5)

9.h3?! ♖e5 10.♖d3 c6! (10...♗xc3 also wins a safe pawn, but the text is even more ambitious) 11.♗a4 a5 (threatening to win the bishop) 12.♗b3 b5 13.a4 b4 14.♗e2 ♗xe4 (now Black has won the pawn under even more favourable circumstances) 15.♖f3 d5 16.♗g3 ♗c5 17.♗e3 ♗xb3 18.cxb3 ♗xb2 and White resigned in Willemze-Bosch, Dieren 2003, as he remains two pawns down for nothing. Playing an SOS is even better than writing about one!

● 6.d3 h6 (avoiding 7.♗g5 with an unpleasant pin) 7.a3 ♖e8 8.h3 ♗f8 9.♖e1 d6 10.♗e3 a6 11.♗c4 ♗e6 12.♗xe6 ♖xe6 13.♗d5 ½-½ Ghaem Maghami-Harishkrishna, Abu Dhabi 2004.

### 5...0-0

Not having castled yet, Black might like to play 5...h6, and now:

● 6.♗e2 0-0 7.c3 ♖e8 8.0-0 a6 9.♗a4 b5 10.♗c2 ♗f8 11.♗g3 d5 12.h3 g6 13.a4 ♗b7 14.♖e1 ♗g7 with a superior Ruy Lopez for Black in Slapikas-Asauskas, Vilnius 2004.

● 6.♗e3 a6 7.♗a4 0-0 8.h3 b5 9.♗b3 ♗b4!?! (preparing to strike in the centre with ...d5) 10.0-0 ♗xc3 11.bxc3 d5 12.exd5 ♗xd5 13.♗d2 ♖e8 with approximate equality in Schurade-Gustafsson, Höckendorf 2004.

### 6.a3

White prepares a retreat square for his king's bishop, and prevents a possible ...♗b4. What is more, he cleverly postpones castling.

### 6...♖e8

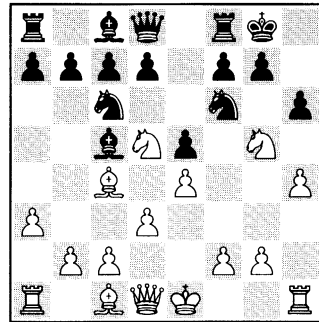
The danger of combining castling with playing 6...h6?! was demonstrated in Smeets-Pavasovic, Wijk aan Zee C 2004. Indeed, that's what White was waiting for! He needed no further provocation to launch a kingside attack with 7.g4! ♗e7 (7...♗xg4 8.♖g1 is too dangerous) 8.♗xc6! dxc6 9.h3 ♖d6 10.♗h4 ♗d5! 11.♗f5 ♗xf5 12.gxf5 ♗xc3 13.bxc3 b5?! (13...♖fd8! was the correct way to proceed according to Smeets. Black plans to

evacuate his king to the queenside, while holding the kingside with ...♗f6) 14.♗e3 a5 and now according to Smeets 15.♖g1! a4 16.♖h5 ♗h7 17.♗e2 preparing to double the rooks on the g-file would have given White a decisive attack.

### 7.♗c4

Eying the f7 square. Black did not fear 7.♗g5 because of 7...♗d4! 8.♗xd4?! exd4 planning 9.♗d5? c6 10.♗xf6+ gxf6 11.♗h6 f5 12.♗c4 ♖h4.

### 7...♗c5 8.♗g5 ♖f8 9.♗d5 h6 10.h4!?



### 10...d6

Of course Black does not take on g5. Now it appears though that White has sinned against one of Steinitz's rules – attacking while he did not have an advantage.

11.c3 ♗xd5 12.exd5 ♗e7 13.♖h5 ♗f5 14.♗e4 ♗xe4 15.dxe4 f5 Not f7, but f2 is a weak square! 16.f3 fxe4 17.fxe4 ♗f2+ 18.♗e2 ♖d7 19.♗d2 ♖f7 20.♗d3 ♖af8 21.♖af1 ♗g3 22.♖xf7 ♖xf7 23.♖h3 ♗f4 24.♗e1 ♗g6 25.♖e2 h5 26.♖h1 ♗g7 27.♖f1 ♗g8 28.g3 ♗h6 29.♖xf7+ ♖xf7 30.♖f2? 30.♗c2 30...♗f6 31.a4?! a6 32.♖f3 ♖d7! 33.♗b3 ♖h3 34.♗d1 ♗g4 35.♗e2 ♖h2 36.b4? ♖g1 Black has cunningly infiltrated and is totally winning. 37.♖f1 ♖e3+ 38.♗c2 ♖c1+ 39.♗d3 And White resigned as 39...♖b1+ 40.♗c4 ♗e3 mates.

## SOS Warning

(SOS-1, Chapter 11, p.94)

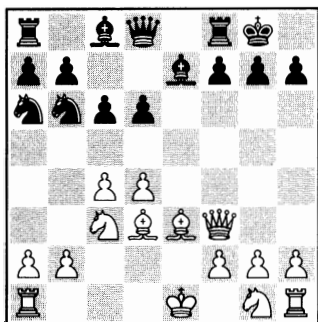
A note of warning for readers eager to play Kortchnoi's 7. ♖f3 in the Alekhine. Black's play in the following game deserves to be subjected to careful scrutiny.

□ Vladimir Kovalenko

■ Vladimir Sergeev

Kiev 2004

1.e4 ♟f6 2.e5 ♟d5 3.d4 d6 4.c4 ♟b6  
5.exd6 exd6 6.♟c3 ♟e7 7.♖f3 0-0  
8.♟e3 c6 9.♟d3 ♟a6



So far Black had mainly tried 9...d5 when SOS-1 gives 10.c5 ♟d6 11.♟ge2 b6 with a tiny edge for White (p.95). I like Sergeev's move. Black simply develops, aiming for either ...♟b4 or simply ...♟c7 – the central push d6-d5 can wait.

**10.a3**

10.♟ge2? ♟b4 ♠ illustrates a main point of 9...♟a6.

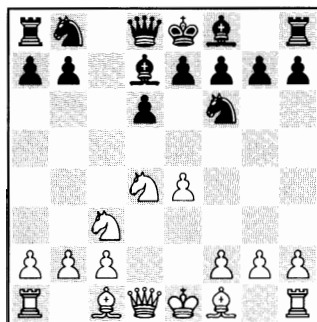
**10...♟c7 11.♟ge2 d5** Only now. **12.c5 ♟c4 13.♟c1 ♟f6 14.b3 14.0-0 14...♟a5 15.♟c2 15.♖b1** removes the rook from the a1-h8 diagonal. **15...b6 16.0-0 bxc5 17.dxc5 ♟a6** Now Black is just better. **18.♟b2 ♖e8 19.♖fe1 ♖b8! 20.b4 ♟c4 21.♟c1 ♟e6 22.♟f4? ♖b7 23.♟d3 ♖be7** With his wonderful piece

coordination Black is ready to strike. **24.♟xc4? ♟xc4 24...♟d4** also wins. **25.♟d6 ♟d4 0-1**

## Kupreichik Reigns Supreme

Both grandmasters Sedlak and Krum Georgiev have been rather successful with the Kupreichik Variation. Some fragments to convince you of its viability.

1.e4 c5 2.♟f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♟xd4 ♟f6 5.♟c3 ♟d7



● **6.♟e2 ♟c6 7.♟e3 e6 8.♟db5 ♖b8 9.0-0 ♟e7 10.f4 0-0 11.♟f3 ♖c8 12.♖e2 a6 13.♟d4 b5 14.a3 ♖c7 15.♖fd1 ♖ab8** With a very pleasant Scheveningen-like position. White missed an intermediate move when he embarked upon. **16.e5?! dxe5 17.♟xc6 17.♟xc6 exd4!** (17...♟xc6 18.♟xc6 ♖xc6 19.fxe5= was White's idea) **18.♟xd7 dxc3! 19.♟xc8 cxb2 20.♖ab1 ♖xc8** and Black is better. **17...♟xc6 18.♟xc6 exf4!** with advantage for Black in Kakkanas-Kr.Georgiev, Thessaloniki 2003.

● **6.♟c4 e6 7.♟e3 ♟c6 8.♟b3 a6 9.♖e2 ♖c8 10.0-0-0 ♟a5 11.g4 ♖xc3! 12.bxc3 ♟xe4 13.♟d2 d5 14.f3 ♟xd2**

15. ♖xd2 ♙a3+ 16. ♖b1 0-0 and Black was better, S.Ilic-Kr.Georgiev, Thessaloniki 2003.

● 6.f3 ♖b6 7.g4 h6 7... ♗c6. 8.h4 e6 9. ♗b3 a6 10. ♖e2 ♖c7 11. ♖g1 g6 12. ♙e3 b5 13.a3 ♗c6 14.0-0-0 ♙e7 15.g5 hxg5 16.hxg5 ♗h5 17.f4 b4 18.axb4 ♗xb4 19.f5 exf5 20. ♗d4 with this intermediate move White aims to gain control over square d5 unclear, Kiril Georgiev-Sedlak, Topola 2004.

● 6.f4 ♗c6 7. ♗f3 g6!? 7...e6 8. ♙d3 ♙g7 9.0-0 ♙g4! 10. ♖e1 ♙xf3 11. ♗xf3 ♗d4 12. ♗f1 ♗d7 13. ♖f2 0-0 14. ♙e3 ♗c6 15. ♖h1 ♖a5 16. ♙d2 ♖b6 and now White should not be over-optimistic about his chances with 17. ♖h4 ♖xb2 18. ♗ab1 ♖a3 19.e5? 19. ♗b3 ♖a5 20. ♗b5 ♖d8 21. ♗xb7 ♗c5 22. ♗bb1 e6. 19...dxe5 20.f5 ♗f6 21. ♗f3 ♗f6 22.fxg6 hxg6 23. ♗h3 ♗d4 24. ♗e4 ♖xa2 25. ♗f1 ♗xe4! 26. ♗xe4 ♖c4 27. ♙d3 ♖xh4 28. ♗xh4 ♗d8 and Black won in Fedorchuk-Sedlak, Esbjerg 2004.

● 6. ♙e3 ♗g4 7. ♙g5 h6 8. ♙h4 g5 9. ♙g3 ♙g7 10. ♗f5?! 10. ♙e2; 10. ♖d2; 10.h3. 10... ♙xf5 11.exf5 ♙xc3+ 12.bxc3 ♖a5! 13. ♗b1 ♗f6 14. ♙b5+ ♗c6 15.0-0 0-0 16. ♗e1 ♗ae8 White may have the bishop pair, but Black has a better pawn structure. 17.h4 ♖xc3 18.hxg5 hxg5 19. ♖c1 ♗h7 20. ♗e4 ♖f6 21. ♙d1 ♖xf5 22. ♙d3 ♖d7 23. ♗e3 f6 24. ♙c4+? 24. ♙g6! ♗d8 (24... ♖g7 25. ♖h5 ♗h8 26. ♙xe8 ♗xe8 27. ♙xd6!) 25. ♙h2 enables the rook to join the attack along the third rank. 24... ♖g7 25. ♙e6 ♖c7 26. ♖g4 ♗d8 27. ♙b3 f5 28. ♖h5 e5 29. ♗d1 ♗f7 30. ♖f3 f4 with a superior position, Nevednichy-Sedlak, Petrovac 2004.

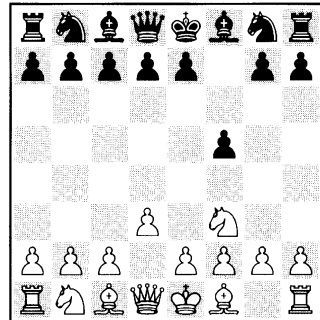
## And the Winner is...

(SOS-1, Chapter 16, p.127)

At the end of SOS-1 readers were called upon to send in their games with any of the SOS ideas mentioned in the book. We received some entertaining entries. However, months before the final date of submission it became clear that we had a winner! Magnus Carlsen conjured up a powerful novelty to blow former World Championship Candidate Sergey Dolmatov off the board in a mere 19 moves. Such is the SOS power of Youth. We hereby proudly present the winner of the 1st Prize:

- Magnus Carlsen  
 Sergey Dolmatov  
 Moscow 2004

1. ♗f3 f5 2.d3



I dubbed this the Improved Lisitsin Gambit in SOS-1. Magnus must have prepared it specifically for Dolmatov, who is known to be a great connoisseur of the Dutch.

2...d6 3.e4 e5 4. ♗c3 ♗c6 5.exf5 ♙xf5 6.d4 ♗xd4

The main game in SOS-1 went 6... ♗b4 7. ♙b5+ c6 8. ♙a4 e4 9. ♗g5 d5 and now 10.f3! was shown to favour White in Krasenkow-Kindermann, Panormo 2001.

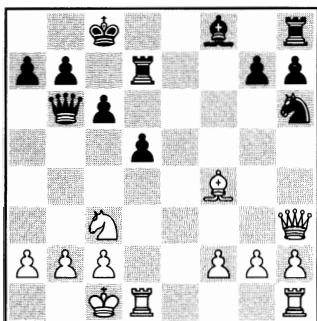
7. ♗xd4 exd4 8. ♖xd4 ♗f6



The main alternative is 8...c6 when 9.♙f4!? is strong:

● 9...♙xc2 invites some rather direct play by White: 10.♗d2! ♙g6 11.♞e1+ ♗d7 (11...♗f7 12.♙c4+ d5 13.♘xd5+-) 12.g3!? ♣b6 13.♙h3+ ♗d8 (13...♗c7 14.♙xd6+! ♙xd6 15.♣xg7+ ♗b8 16.♗c1! ♣xf2 17.♘e4 wins) 14.♙g5+ ♗c7 15.♘d5+ 1-0 Seel-Horstmann, Bad Wiessee 2003.

● 9...♣b6 10.♣d2 d5 11.0-0-0 0-0-0 12.♙d3 ♙xd3 13.♣xd3 ♘h6? (Black wants to prevent the queen check on f5, but creates an even more devastating possibility. Still 13...♘f6 14.♣f5+ ♞d7 15.♙e5 ♙e7 16.♙d4, followed by 17.♞he1, gives White a nice edge too) 14.♣h3+ ♞d7



15.♘xd5! ♣d8 (15...cxd5 16.♞xd5 ♣c6 17.♞hd1 is the simple point of White's sacrifice) 16.♙xh6 cxd5 (16...gxh6 17.♘f6+-) 17.♞xd5 ♗c7 18.♙f4+ 1-0, Sandner-Rechel, Germany Bundesliga 2003/04. White seems to be having all the fun in these lines.

### 9.♙c4!

Sacrificing the c2-pawn and improving upon

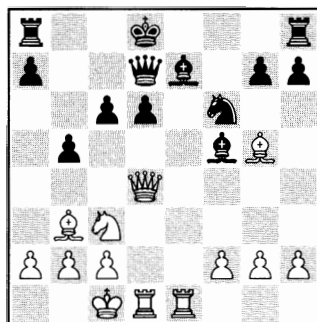
Romanishin-Malaniuk, Tallinn 1987, which went: 9.♙d3 ♙xd3 10.♣xd3 c6 11.0-0 ♙e7 with equal play.

### 9...c6 10.♙g5 b5

The more natural 10...d5 fails to 11.0-0-0 ♙e7 12.♣e5!, followed by 13.♞he1, with a crushing attack.

### 11.♙b3 ♙e7 12.0-0-0 ♣d7 13.♞he1 ♗d8

After 13...0-0-0 14.♣f4! it is hard to prevent 15.♞xe7 as 14...♞he8 is met by 15.♙f7. Also strong is 14.g4 ♙xg4 15.♞xe7.



### 14.♞xe7!

A devastating sacrifice that decides the game.

### 14...♣xe7

Taking with the king is equally bad after 14...♗xe7 15.♙xf6+ gxf6 16.♞e1+ and a subsequent ♣xf6 decides.

### 15.♣f4 ♙d7 16.♙e4! d5

16...♞f8 17.♘d6 winning.

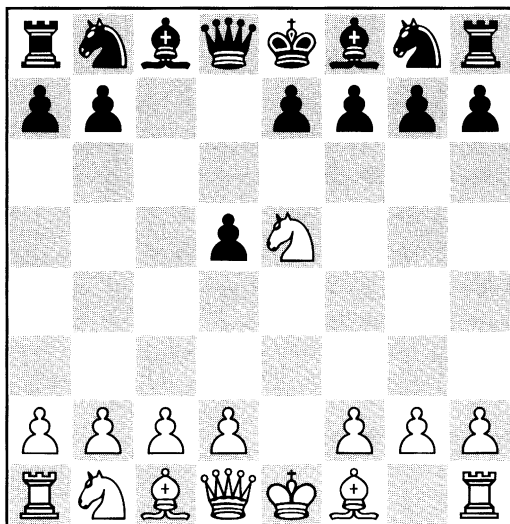
### 17.♘xf6 h6 18.♙h4 g5 19.♣d4! 1-0

Dolmatov threw in the towel in view of 19...gxh4 20.♘xd5!.

## CHAPTER 2

*Ian Rogers*

# Refining Fischer's Plan



NIC KEY CK 1.4

### Caro-Kann Exchange with 4. $\text{Nf3}$

At first sight, 1. e4 c6 2.  $\text{Nf3}$  d5 3. exd5 cxd5 4.  $\text{Nf3}$ !, the subject of this SOS article, does not look like a very sophisticated positional system.

In fact, when first faced by this plan, in the 2004 Bangkok Open in a game which decided first place, I could not take the system seriously and soon found myself suffering without a pair of bishops and without counterplay. Yet the 4.  $\text{Nf3}$  system is just a refinement of the old 1. e4 c6 2. d4 d5 3. exd5 cxd5 4.  $\text{Nf3}$   $\text{Nc6}$  5. c3 plan, which was used with such success by Fischer in the 1970 USSR versus Rest of the World match. In the old 4.  $\text{Nf3}$  system, White usually makes great efforts to avoid playing  $\text{Nf3}$ , because

then Black's ...  $\text{Ng4}$  will set up an annoying pin. Yet e5 is the best square for White's knight, so what better way to avoid the pin than to send the knight there immediately? Of course moving one's only developed piece twice in the opening is not quite according to orthodox theories. However, if you have read this far in an SOS chapter, such niceties are unlikely to prove too great an obstacle to trying out an original and sometimes dangerous plan. Apart from Internet games, where 4.  $\text{Nf3}$  has been quite popular, there have been only a few dozen tournament games with 4.  $\text{Nf3}$ , with the Czech player Cernousek being the line's main advocate. However in 2004, 4.  $\text{Nf3}$  has

been adopted by a number of other strong players, with the high point being Marie Sebag's inspiring victory over WGM Xu Yuanyuan (see below).

**1.e4 c6 2.♘f3 d5 3.exd5 cxd5 4.♗e5!?**

4.d4 ♗g4 would be exactly the type of position White is trying to avoid.

After 4.♗e5!? a knight-move is called for. However, 4...♗d7 looks awkward. After 5.d4 e6 White should probably choose either 6.♗d3 or 6.f4, even though 6.♗b5 ♗f6 7.0-0 ♗e7 8.♞e2 0-0 9.♗d2 ♗xe5 10.dxe5 ♗d7 11.♗b3 f6 12.exf6 ♞xf6 13.♗g5 ♞g6 14.♗xe7 ♞xe7 15.f4 was also a little better for White in Labib-Ezat, Tanta City Open 2001.

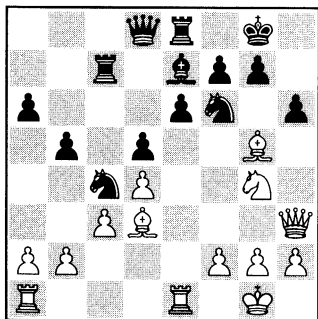
Therefore Black should play either:

- A) 4...♗f6
- B) 4...♗c6

### Variation A

**4...♗f6 5.d4**

It is probably too early to play 5.♗b5+!?, after 5...♗d7 6.♗xd7 ♗bxd7 7.d4 (7.0-0 is well met by 7...a6) the game Tworuzska-Steczek, Poland tt 2003, went 7...e6!?, and after 8.0-0 ♗e7 9.c3 0-0 10.♗d2 ♞c8 11.♞e1 a6 12.♗d3 ♞e8 13.♗f3 White built up a typical 4.♗e5 attack. The game continued: 13...b5 14.♞e2 ♗b6 15.♗e5 ♗f8 16.♞f3 ♞c7 17.♞h3 ♗c4 18.♗g5 h6 19.♗g4 ♗e7



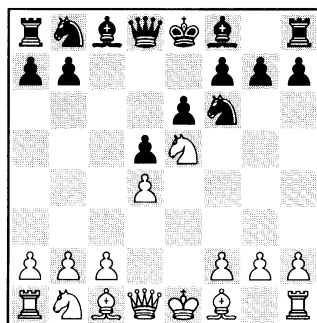
20.♗xh6+! gxf6 21..♗xh6 ♗f8 22.b3! ♗xh6 23.♞xh6 ♗d6 24.♞e3 ♗fe4 25.♗xe4 ♗xe4 26.♞h3 f5 and now White took a perpetual check with 27.♞h8+ and 28.♞h7+ when 27.f3! would have capped off the attack – White reaches at least a rook endgame with an extra pawn.

Instead of 7...e6 (after 7.d4) Black should play 7...♞a5+! 8.♗c3 e6 9.0-0 ♗b4 when he has no problems.

- A1) 5...e6
- A2) 5...♗f5
- A3) 5...g6

### Variation A1

**5...e6**



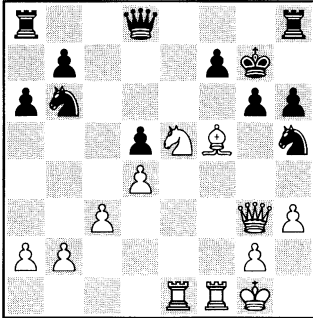
This is just what White is hoping for; the c8 bishop will now have little or no influence on the game. White can continue

**6.c3**

Here 6.♗d2 has also been popular, e.g. 6...♗d6 (6...♗e7 7.c3 0-0 8.♗d3 ♗bd7 9.f4 ♗e8 10.♞c2 f5 11.♗df3± Capece-Nathans, Ybbs 1968) 7.f4 ♗c6 8.c3 ♞b6 9.♗d3 or 9.♗df3 ♗e4 10.♗d3 f6, Cherad-El Imam, Algiers 2000, and now 11.♗c4! would have been good for White.

**6...♗e7 7.♗d3 ♗bd7 8.f4 ♞c7 9.0-0 ♗b6 10.♗d2 ♗d7 11.♞e2 a6 12.♗df3 h6** And now White could just build up the

pressure but chose to crash through with  
**13.f5! exf5 14.♙f4 ♖d8 15.♘xd7**  
**♗xd7 16.♗e5 g6 17.♗ae1 ♔f8**  
**18.♗e3 ♘g4 19.♗c1 ♙d6 20.h3 ♙xf4**  
**21.♗xf4 ♘f6 22.♙e5 ♖d8 23.♙xf5**  
**♘g7 24.♗g3 ♘h5**



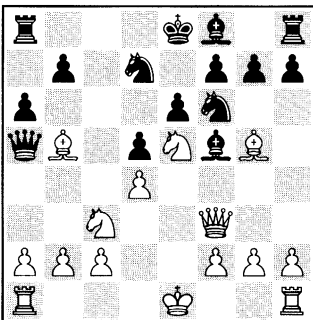
**25.♙e6!! ♗e8 26.♗g4 ♗xe6**  
**27.♗xf7+ ♗xf7 28.♘xf7+-** Shevelev-  
 Roumegeois, Paris 2000.

### Variation A2

**5...♙f5**

The bishop move looks extremely danger-  
 ous in view of

**6.♙b5+ ♘bd7 7.♗f3 e6 8.♙g5 ♗a5+**  
**9.♘c3 a6**



**10.♗h5!!**

although matters are not entirely clear after

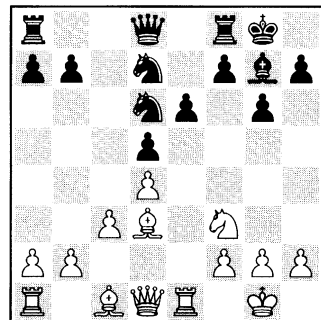
**10...g6! 11.♙xf6 axb5 12.♗h4 ♙b4!?**  
 Now White can grab the rook on h8, but not  
 recapture on c3. However, Black will then  
 have fair compensation for the exchange, so  
**13.0-0**

Maybe the most sober idea, with attacking  
 chances even after the removal of the f6  
 bishop.

### Variation A3

**5...g6 6.♙b5+**

Rather innocuous looks 6.♙d3 as it is hitting  
 the g6 pawn. Play may continue 6...♙g7  
 7.♘d2 0-0 (7...♘c6 8.♘df3 0-0 9.c3 ♘d7  
 10.♘xd7 ♙xd7 11.♙f4 ♙g4 12.0-0 f6! gave  
 Black serious counterplay in Sebag-Vogel,  
 European Women's Championship,  
 Dresden 2004) 8.0-0 ♘c6 9.♘df3 ♘g4  
 10.♘xc6 bxc6 11.♙e1 ♙e8 12.h3 ♘f6 13.c3  
 ♗b6 14.♗e2 a5 15.♘e5 ♙a6 16.♙xa6  
 ♗xa6 and Black had equalised in Hakki-  
 Magerramov, Damascus (Arab Clubs) 2003.  
**6...♙d7 7.♘xd7 ♘bxd7 8.0-0 ♙g7**  
**9.♙e1 0-0 10.c3 ♘e4 11.♘d2 ♘d6**  
**12.♙d3 e6 13.♘f3**



And here a draw was agreed in Antonio-  
 Rogers, Bangkok Open 2004.

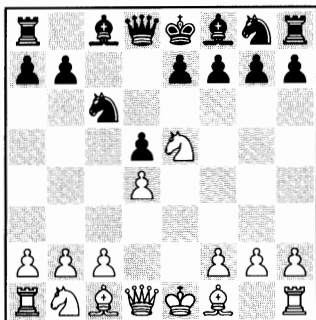
White has all the chances, with h4-h5 in the  
 air, but was half a point ahead in the tourna-  
 ment with only two rounds to play. There-  
 fore he went for the safe result.

## Variation B

4...♘c6

The most logical move.

5.d4



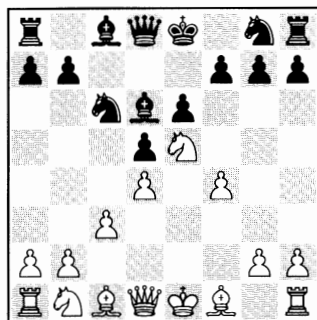
Black has tried a lot of ideas here, although never 5...f6?? 6.♖h5+, nor, curiously, 5...♘xe5!? 6.dxe5 when the e5 pawn should not be too difficult for White to maintain.

5...♘f6

The alternatives are:

● **5...♖c7?!** The early queen-move was used in one of the original 4.♘e5 games, but the attempt to grab a pawn after **6.♗f4 6.♗b5!?** a6 **7.♗xc6+ bxc6 8.0-0±. 6...♖b6** came badly unstuck after **7.♘c3! ♘f6 8.♗b5** Here Black was lucky to find a way to hang on with **8...a6! 9.♗xc6!** Capturing the queen with **9.♘xf7 ♖xf7 10.♗c7 ♖xb5 11.♗xb5 axb5** is far from clearly good for White. **9...axb5** Still White maintained an edge and went on to win after **10.♘e5 b4 11.♗d3 e6 12.0-0 ♗e7 13.♗e1 0-0 14.♗e3± ♖d8 15.♗h3 g6 16.♗h6 ♗e8 17.♖f3 ♗a5 18.g4 ♗d6 19.♗g5 ♗e7 20.♗xh7! ♗f8 21.♗h4 ♘d7 22.♖h3 ♗xg5 23.♗h8+ ♖g7 24.♖h7+ ♖f6 25.♘xf7!+-** Sinulingga-Bordonada, Nice Olympiad 1974.

● **5...e6?!** Shutting in the bishop is again dubious. **6.c3 ♗d6 7.f4!?**



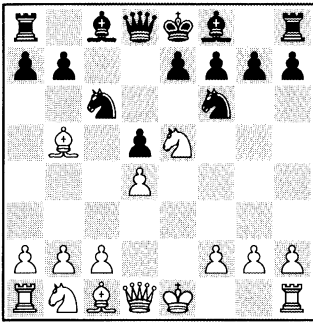
Here **7.♗b5?! ♘e7 8.f4 0-0 9.♗d3 ♖c7** is far less convincing, e.g. **10.♖c2 (10.♖h5 g6 11.♖h4** walks into **11...♘xd4!** and **10.0-0 f6** is similar to the game) **10...h6 11.0-0 f6 12.♗h7+ ♖h8 13.♗g6+ ♘xg6 14.♗xg6 ♗d7** and Black was ready to break in the centre in Shevelev-Erenburg, Israel tt 2002. **7...♘f6 8.♗d3 ♘e4!** – **8...0-0 9.♘d2** is very comfortable for White. **9.0-0 0-0 10.♘d2 f5 11.♗df3** And, despite the knight on e4, White should later be able to play for g4 while Black is struggling for a plan.

● **5...♖b6!? 6.c3 ♘xe5 7.dxe5 e6 8.♗d3** This leads to a French-style position where White should be able to keep a slight edge, e.g. **8...♗d7 9.♖e2 a6 10.♗e3 ♗c5 11.♗xc5 ♖xc5 12.♘d2 ♘e7 13.♘b3 ♖b6 14.0-0 (14.♖g4 ♗b5! 15.♗xb5+ axb5 16.♖xg7 ♗g8 17.♖xh7 ♗xg2** gave Black excellent counterplay in Cernousek-Medvegy, Budapest Elekes Memorial 2004) **14...♗b5 15.♗xb5+ ♖xb5 16.♖xb5+ axb5 17.♘d4** with an endgame where Black will have to work very hard to earn a draw.

Our main game continued:

**6.♗b5!**

This pin is White's most aggressive option, enabling her to exert a pressing initiative.



6.c3 is less incisive, although after 6...g6 7.♔d3 again looks innocuous, e.g. 7...♙g7 8.0-0 0-0:

– 9.f4 is well met by 9...♙f5! (9...♗b6 10.♖h1 ♗e4 11.♗e2 f5 12.♘d2 a5 13.♘df3 a4 14.a3 ♗c7 15.♙e3 worked out well for White in Muniz-Escofet, Uruguay Championship, Montevideo 2004. However 9...♗e8!? is interesting, e.g. 10.♘d2 ♘d6 11.g4?! f6 12.♘xc6 bxc6 13.f5 e5 14.fxe6p ♙xe6 and Black generated good counterplay against the white king in Zarnicki-Belov, ACP Internet Blitz Tournament 2004) 10.♙xf5 gxf5 with easy equality.

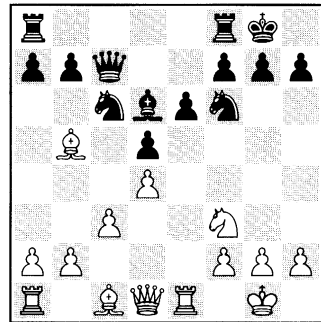
– 9.♞e1 and now Black choose the moment to play: 9...♗xe5! (9...♘d7 10.♘xd7 ♗xd7 11.♘d2 e5 12.dxe5 ♗xe5 13.♗b3 ♘xd3 14.♗xd3 ♗f5 15.♞d1 ♗xd3 16.♞xd3 led to an ending eventually won by White in Labib-Molina, Bled Olympiad 2002) 10.dxe5 ♘g4 11.♙f4 ♗b6 12.♗d2 (12.♗e2 is even worse after 12...f6 13.exf6 ♞xf6! 14.♙g3? ♞e6) 12...f6 13.exf6 ♗xf6 14.♙g3 ♙h6 15.♗e2 ♙f4! with a nasty attack, e.g. 16.f3 ♙xg3 17.hxg3 ♗b6+ 18.♖h1 ♗f2+ 19.♖h2 ♞f6!.

However, instead of 7.♔d3, the pin with 7.♙b5 is still annoying: 7...♙d7 8.♘xd7 ♗xd7 9.0-0 and the game is likely to transpose to the Antonio-Rogers game mentioned earlier.

**6...♗b6?!**

Amazingly, after this move Black seems already to be in serious trouble.

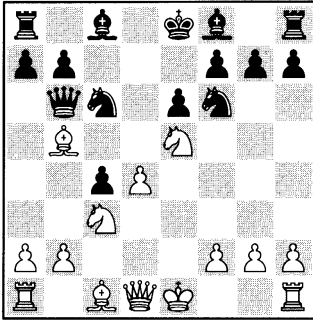
6...♙d7 is far more natural, although after 7.♘xd7 ♗xd7 8.c3 e6 9.0-0 ♙d6 10.♘d2 0-0 (10...a6 11.♙d3 0-0 12.♞e1 b5 13.a3 ♞ab8 14.♗f3 h6 15.♗e5 White had an edge in Cernousek-Matras, Frydek Mistek 2004. It should be noted that the minority attack rarely seems to be a serious problem for White in these types of position, whereas White's kingside attack can flare up quite quickly – the reverse of the situation in most Exchange Queen's Gambit variations) 11.♞e1 ♗c7 12.♗f3 White has the typically comfortable set-up he is aiming for in the 4.♗e5 line.



12...h6 (Black is trying to negate a possible ♙d3 followed by ♙g5 but in doing so makes other options such as ♙d3-c2 and ♗d3 more attractive later) 13.♙d3 (13.♗e2 looks better, hoping to put another knight on e5) 13...♞fe8 14.h3 ♞ab8 15.♗e2 ♘d7 16.♙d2 a6 17.a4!? ♞e7! (Black has defended well and is now thinking about doubling on the e file and playing ...e5. Instead of calmly waiting for ...e5 and making the most of the resultant isolated d-pawn, White now panicks) 18.c4?! when after 18...dxc4 19.♙xc4 ♗f6 20.♙c3 ♗b6 21.♗e5 ♙xe5 22.dxe5 ♘d5 the position was dead equal in Cernousek-Polak, Brno 2004.

**7.c4! dxc4 8.♘c3 e6**

8...♙d7 9.♙e3 is also very awkward for Black, although perhaps better than the game.



**9.♚a4! ♙d7 10.♘xd7 ♘xd7 11.♙e3! ♜d8**

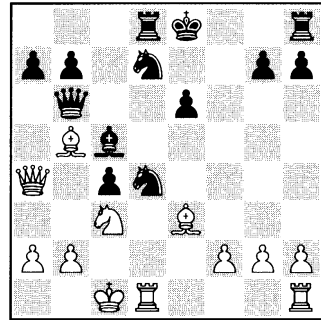
This looks and is ugly, but the obvious alternative 11...♚c7 walks into 12.d5 ♘ce5 13.0-0-0 (13.dxe6!?) 13...♘d3+ (13...a6 14.dxe6 fxe6 15.♙f4! is also very strong for White) 14.♙b1 when the fall of the c pawn will leave the d3 knight stranded – and Black’s king is still a long way from leaving the centre of the board.

**12.d5 ♘d4 13.dxe6 fxe6**

13...♚xe6 14.0-0-0 ♘xb5 15.♘xb5, followed

by 16.♞he1, is also hopeless for Black.

**14.0-0-0 ♙c5**



**15.♙xd7+! ♜xd7 16.♚xc4**

Suddenly Black has no defence against the threat of 17.♘a4. Yuanyuan tries a tricky defence but with the king still on e8, all the tactics are bound to favour White.

**16...♚c7 17.♙xd4 ♚f4+ 18.♙b1 ♙xd4 19.♚xe6+ ♜e7 20.♚xe7+! 1-0**

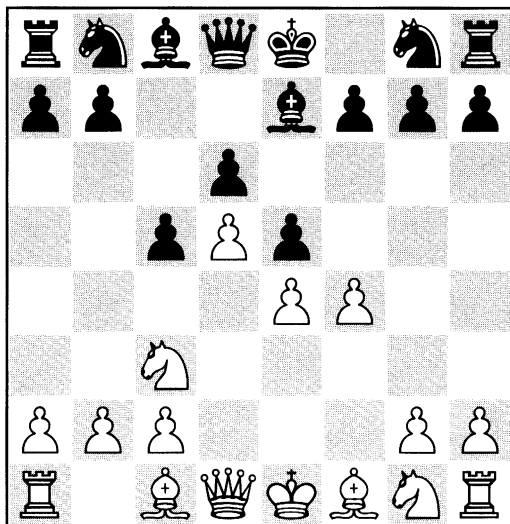
This was the game Sebag-Xu Yuanyuan, Cannes 2004 from the match France-China .

A fine win by Sebag and a great advertisement for the SOS counter to the Caro-Kann – 4.♘e5!

## CHAPTER 3

*Alexander Beliavsky*

# Destroying the Benoni Wall



NIC KEY OI 9.14

### Alekhine's 5.f4

**1.d4 c5 2.d5 e5 3.e4 d6 4.c3 e7 5.f4**

The Benoni Wall is usually applied by players who want to avoid open positions and well-developed theoretical lines. Incidentally, I don't understand why this system is called by the old Hebrew name 'Benoni' which means 'son of sorrow'. Nobody knows who gave the system its name. Perhaps it is really such a sad position? Common sense in chess says that usually it is sensible to play 'contra-lines': meaning that if your opponent wants to open the position, you better try to close it and visa versa. So White's best strategy against the Benoni Wall is to open the position. For this purpose the system

with 5.f4! is eminently suitable and indeed the most direct approach to tear down the Benoni Wall. There is nothing surprising in the fact that this variation was introduced into modern practice by the great Alexander Alekhine.

[*Editorial note:* It was Alekhine who played the correct move order (4.c3 and 5.f4) in a simultaneous exhibition in 1935. However, Bogoljubow had played 4.f4 *against* Alekhine one year earlier in their World Championship match.]

Positive elements of an early f4 plan are a clear advantage in development, and the opening of the centre as part of a counter strategy. There is only one negative aspect to



5.f4: the weakening of the e5 square, which may become a stronghold for a black knight. However, Black has a huge disadvantage in space, and, as we know from similar positions in the closed Ruy Lopez, it is not nearly enough for him to just control the e5 square. What is more White will often create threats on the f-file. In addition, White's advantage in development means that he can sometimes realize the central break e4-e5. Naturally, White could have implemented his plan on the fourth move as well (4.f4). However, please note that in that case Black will find a much better way of developing his kingside by means of the manoeuvre  $\text{d}g8\text{-e7-g6}$  controlling e5. After 4. $\text{d}c3$  Black has nothing better than 4... $\text{d}f6$  or 4... $\text{e}7$ . We will examine the merits of this system by means of two games.

□ Alexander Beliavsky

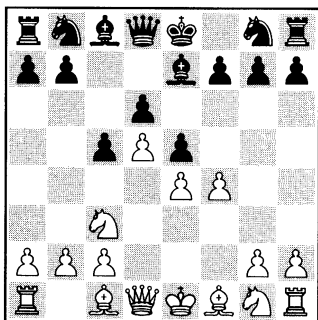
■ Mark Dvoretzky

Vilnius 1975

**1.d4 c5 2.d5 e5 3.e4 d6 4. $\text{d}c3$   $\text{e}7$**

By developing the bishop Black keeps more options open. Note that 4... $\text{d}f6$  5.f4 will usually transpose to lines with  $\text{d}f6$  mentioned below.

**5.f4**



**5... $\text{exf4}$**

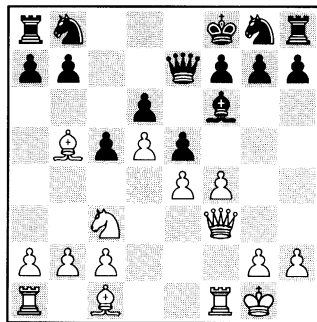
I can't say that this move is forced. However, the alternatives to keep the e5 stronghold (and not assisting White in developing his bishop for free – 6... $\text{e}4!$ ) were not very successful in practice.

– 5... $\text{d}d7$  6. $\text{d}f3$  a6 7.fxe5  $\text{d}xe5$  8. $\text{d}xe5$  dxe5 9. $\text{e}2$   $\text{d}f6$  10.0-0-0 11.a4 b6 12. $\text{W}e1$   $\text{W}d6$  (the typical plan of transferring the knight to the blockading square does not work here: 12... $\text{d}e8$  13. $\text{e}3$   $\text{d}d6$  14.a5±) 13. $\text{W}g3$   $\text{d}d7$  14. $\text{e}3$   $\text{c}h8$  15.h3  $\text{d}e8$  16. $\text{e}g4!$   $\text{e}xg4$  17. $\text{W}xg4$  c4 18. $\text{E}ab1!$  with a serious advantage for White in P. Nikolic-Ivanovic, Borovo 1981.

– 5... $\text{e}f6$  6. $\text{d}f3$   $\text{e}g4$  7. $\text{e}b5+$

A) 7... $\text{d}d7$  8.0-0 a6 9. $\text{e}xd7+$   $\text{W}xd7$  10.fxe5  $\text{e}xf3$  11.exf6!+–.

B) 7... $\text{c}f8$  8.0-0  $\text{e}xf3$  9. $\text{W}xf3$   $\text{W}e7$



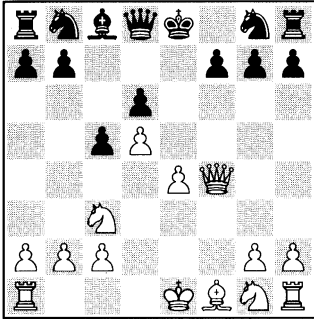
10.g4! a6 11.g5 axb5 12.gxf6  $\text{d}xf6$  13.fxe5 dxe5 14. $\text{e}g5!$  (White is wasting no time to recapture a pawn) 14...b4 15. $\text{d}e2$   $\text{E}a6$  16. $\text{d}g3$  with a strong initiative in Maksimovic-Djuric, Bjelovar 1979.

– 5...a6 6.fxe5 dxe5 7.a4  $\text{d}f6$  8. $\text{d}f3$   $\text{e}g4$  9. $\text{e}2$   $\text{e}xf3$  10. $\text{e}xf3$  0-0 11.0-0  $\text{d}e8$  12. $\text{e}3$   $\text{d}d7$  13. $\text{e}g4!$   $\text{d}df6$  14.a5  $\text{d}d6$  15. $\text{E}a4!$  b5 16.axb6ep  $\text{W}xb6$  17.b3 with strong positional pressure in Lobron-Ivanovic, Reggio Emilia 1984/85.

**6. $\text{e}xf4$   $\text{d}f6$**

Here 6... $\text{e}g5$  looks like a serious option. White keeps his advantage however after

7.♖d2 (nothing serious is gained by 7.♗xg5 ♖xg5 8.♗f3 ♖e3+ 9.♖e2 ♖xe2+ 10.♗xe2 ♗d7 11.♗b5 f6! 12.0-0 ♗e7 13.a4 ♗h6 14.♗d1 ♗f7 15.♗e3 ♗de5 with equality, Zilberstein-Dolmatov, Daugavpils 1978) 7...♗xf4 8.♖xf4



A) after 8...♖f6 9.♖xf6 ♗xf6 10.♗b5 ♗d7 11.♗f3 ♗xe4 12.♗d3 a6 (12...♗f6 13.0-0-0) 13.♗xe4 axb5 14.0-0 White has a huge development advantage.

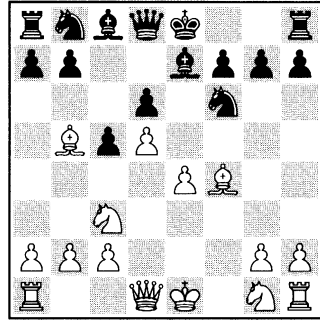
B) 8...a6 9.e5! ♖e7 10.♗f3 ♗d7 11.0-0 dxe5 (after 11...♗xe5 12.♖g3! ♗f6 13.♗xe5 dxe5 14.d6 ♖e6 15.♖xg7 ♖g8 16.♖h6 Black has big problems) 12.♖g3 ♖f6 13.d6 ♖g6 14.♗d5 ♖xg3 15.hxg3 ♗f8 16.♗g5 h6 17.♗c7 ♖b8 18.♗c4 with very unpleasant threats in Shariyazdanov-Malakhov, Ekaterinburg 1996.

Black can switch to completely wild positions with 6...g5?! 7.♗g3 h5 8.h3 h4 9.♗h2 a6 10.♖d2 (interesting is 10.e5!?) 10...♗d7 11.♗f3 f6 12.e5! (not bad is 12.♗d3 ♗h6 13.0-0 ♗f7 14.a4 0-0 15.♗d1! aiming for the f5 square) 12...♗xe5 13.♗xe5 fxe5 14.♗d3 ♗h6 15.♗g6+ ♗d7 16.♗e4 ♗c7 17.0-0-0 ♖g8 18.♗xe5! with huge complications, N. Nikolic-Ivanovic, Herceg Novi 2000.

**7.♗b5+**

This idea is typical for other Benoni positions, but here it is not the best option. Black's main problem is space – especially square d7 for which there are too many pie-

ces. For 7.♗e2, see the next game.



**7...♗bd7**

After 7...♗d7 8.♗xd7+ (illogical is 8.e5 dxe5 9.♗xe5 ♗xb5 10.♗xb5 ♖a5+ 11.♗c3 ♗bd7 12.♗f3 0-0 13.0-0 c4! 14.♗h1 ♗b4! and Black turned the tables in Kaidanov-Dobson, Buenos Aires 2003) 8...♗bxd7 9.♗f3 0-0 10.0-0 ♗g4 11.h3 ♗ge5 12.♗xe5 dxe5 13.♗g3 ♗f6 14.d6 and White has the initiative, Volzhin-Tsebekov, Krasnodar 1997.

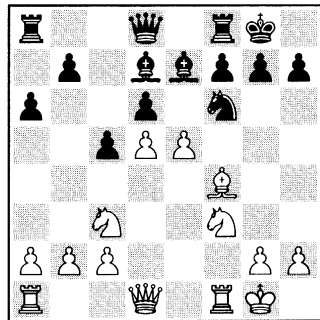
**8.♗f3**

A serious option is 8.a4 preventing Black's play on the queenside.

**8...0-0 9.0-0**

Now I would prefer 9.a4 a6 10.♗d3 ♗g4 11.♖d2 ♖e8 12.h3 ♗ge5 13.♗xe5 ♗xe5 14.♗xe5 dxe5 15.0-0 b6 16.♖f3 ♖f8 17.♖e2 with a slight advantage.

**9...a6 10.♗xd7 ♗xd7 11.e5!**



**11...dxe5**

Haba preferred 11...♗e8 against Kistner, Crailsheim 1995. After 12.♗e4 ♖b5 13.♞f2 dxe5 14.♗xe5 ♗d6 15.♗xd6 ♖xd6 16.c4 f6 17.♗g6 hxg6 18.cxb5 axb5 he had the advantage. However, after 12.♗d2! he would have experienced major problems.

**12.♗xe5?!**

Stronger is 12.♖xe5, trying to play d5-d6.

**12...♖d6 13.♞f3**

I had overlooked the simple tactic 13.♗xf7 ♞xf7 14.♖xd6 ♖g4! winning a piece.

**13...♞c7 14.♗xd7 ♞xd7 15.♞ad1 ♞ae8 16.h3 b5 17.b3 ♖e5**

Black now has a very pleasant position.

**18.d6 ♖d4+ 19.♗h1 ♖xc3 20.♞xc3 ♗e4 21.♞a5 f5 22.♞xa6**

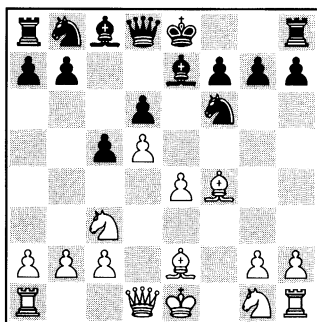
And here I disliked my position after 22...♞a8 and offered a draw, which my opponent accepted.

□ Alexander Beliavsky

■ Bozidar Ivanovic

Yugoslavia tt 1995

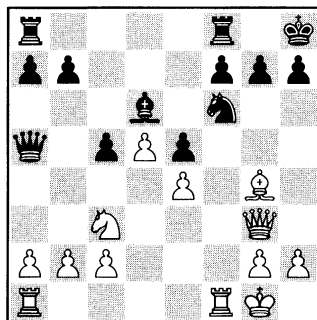
**1.d4 c5 2.d5 e5 3.e4 d6 4.♗c3 ♖e7 5.f4 exf4 6.♖xf4 ♗f6 7.♖e2**



**7...0-0**

This is the normal move, but for Ivanovic it is too timid. Against Komarov (Budva 1996) he played 7...♞a5?! 8.♞d2 0-0 9.♗f3 ♖g4 10.0-0 ♖xf3 11.♖xf3 ♗bd7 12.♞f2 ♗e5 13.♖xe5! dxe5 14.♞g3 ♖d6 15.♖g4! ♗h8

(15...♗d8 to bolster the defence was the only move)



16.♞xf6! gxf6 17.♞h4 with a raging attack. **8.♗f3 ♗h5!?**

Once more Ivanovic is trying to play unusual chess. After the normal 8...♖g4 White can obtain a small advantage with 9.♗d2! (also possible is 9.0-0 ♗bd7 10.♞d2 ♞e8 11.♞ae1 a6 12.e5! dxe5 13.♗xe5 ♖xe2 14.♞xe2 ♖d6 15.♗d3 ♞c7 16.♞fe1, with the better position in Giorgadze-Patino Romaris, La Coruna 1996) 9...♗h5 10.♖e3 ♖xe2 11.♞xe2 g6 12.0-0 ♗d7 13.♗c4 ♗b6 14.♖h6 ♗g7 15.♗e3 ♖g5! 16.♖xg5 ♞xg5 17.♞f3 ♗d7 18.♞af1 ♗e5 19.♞g3 ♞e7 20.a4 ♞ab8 21.♗cd1!, Butnorius-Yermolinsky, Krasnodar 1980.

Simple development with 8...♗bd7 leads to White's advantage after 9.0-0 ♞e8 10.e5! dxe5 11.♗xe5 ♗b6 12.♖b5! ♖d7 13.d6 ♖f8 14.♗xd7 ♗fxd7 15.♗d5 ♗xd5 16.♞xd5, Dao Thien Hai-Malakhov, Menorca 1996.

It is also dangerous to employ a plan from the modern Benoni: 8...♗a6 9.0-0 ♗c7 10.a4 b6 11.h3 a6 12.♞d2 ♖b7 13.♞ab1! b5 14.axb5 axb5 15.b4!, Tibensky-Manik, Slovakia 1997/98, with a clear advantage.

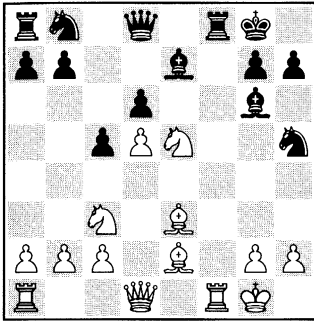
**9.♖e3 f5 10.exf5**

Naturally, it would be a bad positional mistake to allow f5-f4.

**10...♖xf5 11.0-0 ♖g6**

There is no other way as 11...♗f6 12.♗h4

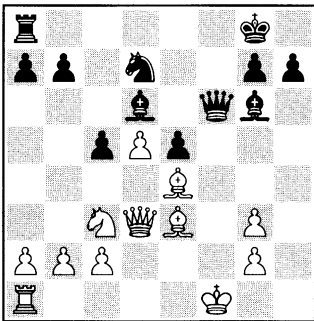
♙d7 13.♘f5 is very pleasant for White.  
**12.♘e5!**



Fritz does not consider such moves – chess is still alive!

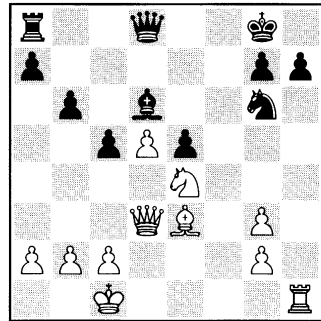
**12...♖xf1+ 13.♗xf1 ♘g3+**  
 13...♗f8+ 14.♗g1 ♘f4 15.♘xg6 ♘xe2+  
 16.♗xe2 hxg6 17.♖f1 and White is virtually winning.  
**14.hxg3 dxe5 15.♙f3**  
 This threatens d5-d6, and therefore forces Black to block White's d-pawn.

**15...♙d6 16.♙e4!**  
 This is a very important move in White's positional concept. The exchange of the light-squared bishops will emphasize the weakness of the squares e4 and e6.  
**16...♘d7 17.♗d3**  
 Worse is 17.♙xg6?! ♗f6+ 18.♗g1 ♗xg6.  
**17...♗f6+**



**18.♗e2!**  
 White transfers his king to the other flank. Thus, White obtains good attacking chances on the kingside.

**18...♙h5+ 19.♗d2 ♘f8 20.♖h1 ♙g6**  
**21.♙xg6 ♘xg6 22.♘e4 ♗d8**  
 After 22...♗e7 White has a decisive blow:  
 23.♖xh7! ♗xh7 24.♘g5+ ♗h6 (24...♗g8  
 25.♗xg6) 25.♗f5.  
**23.♗c1 b6**



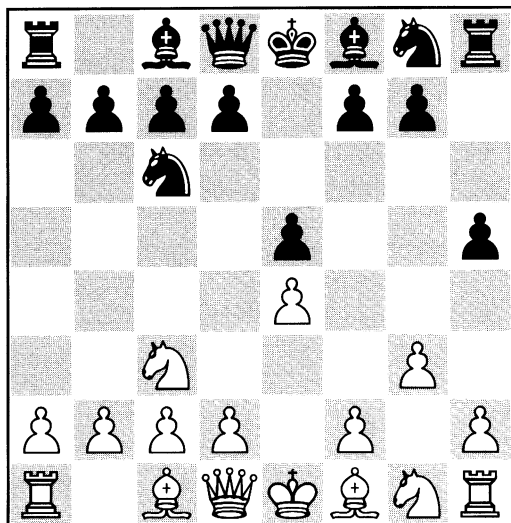
**24.♖xh7!**  
 The most energetic way, but possibly White has a simpler win available in the form of 24.♘g5!.  
**24...c4**  
 24...♗xh7 25.♘g5+ ♗g8 26.♗xg6 is an easy win.  
**25.♗e2**

Forcing Black to take the rook.  
**25...♗xh7 26.♗h5+ ♗g8 27.♗xg6 ♙c5**  
 Or 27...♙e7 28.d6 ♙f6 29.♙g5! winning.  
**28.♙g5!**  
 Preparing ♘e4-f6.  
**28...♙e7 29.d6 ♗f8 30.♗e6+! ♗h7**  
**31.♗h3+ ♗g6 32.♙e7 ♗f5**  
**33.♗xf5+ ♗xf5 34.♘g5**  
 Black resigned.

# CHAPTER 4

## *Maxim Notkin*

### When I was Young



NIC KEY VG 4.6

### 3...h5 against the Vienna

#### 1.e4 e5 2.c3 c6 3.g3 h5

When I was young... Well this sounds like a good way to start my memoirs, but is surely irrelevant for a theoretical article. However... when I was young attending a Moscow chess school our entire group was studying a universal opening method that had been shown to our trainer by one of his former pupils. The set of openings for White included the Vienna Game with 3.g3 and the Closed Sicilian. All you had to do in the opening was to make the moves e4, c3, g3, g2, g2, d3, 0-0, h3, h2 – almost independently of what your opponent was playing. Next, you launched a kingside attack by pushing the f-pawn. To complete the picture

I'd like to mention that against the French Defence and the Caro-Kann my friends applied the scheme e4, d3, d2, gf3, g3, g2, 0-0, and so on; while in the Pirc the fianchetto with c3, ge2, h3 and e3 worked well. White's ideas were extremely plain, but to fight them wasn't an easy task. It's a common thing: when someone plays a secondary line knowing it inside out he often has the advantage in the middlegame. For, to find an antidote you have to dedicate several hours to this set-up during your home preparation. However, as a rule you don't want to waste your precious time on such silly things. After all, you still have to learn by heart five main lines in the Najdorf, and to

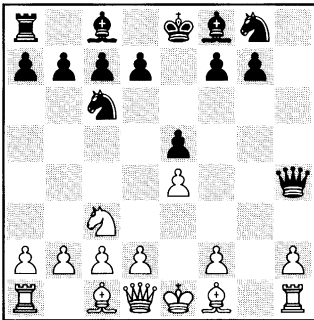
explore three dangerous variations of Ruy Lopez. I did not want to submit to my mates' influence and continued to play the classical openings with White. Yet, in our friendly blitz games when I was Black they often beat me using their boring lines. This made me angry, of course. To my regret at that time Alexander Khalifman had not yet demonstrated to poor people like me the way to solve this particular problem in the open games. The following game was played in the final round of the USSR Youth Championship. The win allowed Khalifman to become junior champion for the second time. Before him only Petrosian and Kasparov had achieved the same feat. To my surprise I did not find this historic game in the ChessBase Megabase, and I hope it will be interesting for the readers to look at the Battle of the Giants as Young Men.

□ Alexey Dreev  
 ■ Alexander Khalifman  
 Kirovabad 1984

1.e4 e5 2.♘c3 ♘c6 3.g3 h5!? 4.♗f3 h4

That's the point!.

5.♗xh4 ♗xh4 6.gxh4 ♖xh4



The exchange sacrifice gives Black a fast and harmonious development and a possi-

bility to create threats at rather an early stage.

7.♙g2 ♙c5 8.0-0 ♗f6 9.♖f3 d6  
 10.♖g3 ♖h7!? 11.d3 ♗d4 12.♙e3  
 ♙d7

Black plays as if he hasn't sacrificed anything, and, indeed, White's material advantage is hardly noticeable.

Bad is 12...♗xc2? 13.♙xc5 ♗xa1 14.♗xa1 dxc5 15.♗b5+—.

**13.b4?**

Correct is 13.♙xd4 ♙xd4 14.♗e2 ♙b6 15.a4 a5, when Black has sufficient compensation.

**13...♙b6!**

Apparently, Dreev counted on 13...♙xb4? 14.♙xd4 exd4 15.♗e2, taking the initiative.

**14.♗ac1 ♗h5 15.♖h4 c6! 16.f3**

It's too late for 16.♙xd4 as Black replies 16...♙d8! trapping the queen! White's major piece is in deep trouble, since moves like 16.a4 cannot save her majesty on account of 16...♙d8 17.♙g5 f6 18.♙e3 g5.

**16...♗f5! 17.exf5 ♙xe3+ 18.♖h1 ♙xc1 19.♗xc1 ♙xf5 20.♗e1 ♖d7**

And Black converted his extra pawn.

In general play in the 3...h5 variation can be divided into several classes.

1. White accepts the exchange sacrifice – the statistics here are awful for him.
2. White allows the opponent to advance h5-h4 and then to take on g3 or to play h4-h3.
3. White takes on h4 with the pawn.
4. White is trying to prevent h5-h4, or to diminish its effect. This division is handy, as our line does not require precise 'move-by-move' knowledge. Moreover, Black sometimes inserts 3...♙c5 4.♙g2, and sometimes plays 3...h5 straightaway. Therefore, the positions may differ, while the ideas remain the same. Let's study some more examples of Black's victorious play when he is the exchange down.

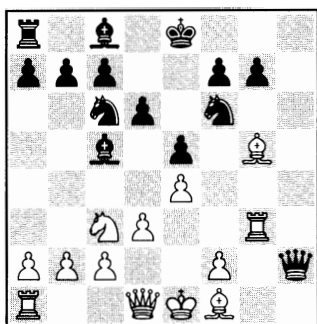
□ Nigel Short

■ Lubosh Kavalek

Prague 1990

### 1.e4 e5 2.♘c3 ♘c6 3.g3 ♘c5

I've had a lot of fun analyzing the encounter Balster-Halasz, Dortmund 1991: 3...h5 4.♘f3 h4 5.♘xh4 ♙xh4 6.gxh4 ♖xh4 7.♙g1!? ♘c5 (7...♖xh2 8.♙g2 ♖h7) 8.♙g3 (it appears that both opponents do not value the h2 pawn – 8.♙g2!? deserved attention) 8...♘f6 9.d3 d6 10.♘g5 ♖xh2



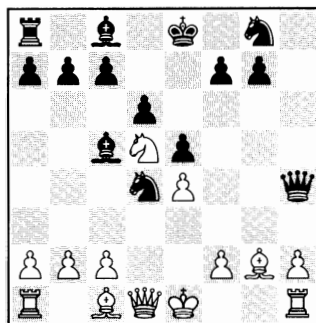
A) now 11.♙g2! was strong with the idea of 11...♖h1 12.♘xf6 ♘h3 (12...gxf6?? 13.♙g8+ ♘d7 14.♖g4+ ♘e7 15.♘d5+ mate) 13.♙xg7 ♖xf1+ 14.♘d2 ♖xf2+ 15.♘c1±.

B) 11.♖d2 ♘h5 12.♙g2 ♖h1 13.0-0-0 ♘d4 14.♘d5 ♘f3? 15.♖e2? (15.♖a5!+-) 15...♘d4 16.♖d2 ♘b6 17.c3 ♘h3! 18.f4! and here Black committed his cavalry – 18...♘f3! 19.♖e2 ♘xg2 20.♘xg2 ♘g1! 21.♖f1? (21.♖g4! ♖h2 22.fxe5 dxe5 23.♘b1 with a clear advantage to White) 21...♖h2 22.♘xb6 ♘g3! 23.♖f2 axb6 24.♘b1 ♘h3! (astonishing!) 25.♖f3 ♘xf4 26.♘xf4 exf4 27.e5 ♖h5! 28.♖xh5 ♘xh5 29.♙h1 g6 30.♘xb7 ♙a7 and Black soon won the ending.

4.♘g2 h5 5.♘f3 h4 6.♘xh4 ♙xh4 7.gxh4 ♖xh4 8.d4 ♘xd4

One of the earliest games in which the exchange sacrifice was played – Hartston-Mariotti, Skopje Olympiad 1972 – went 8...♘xd4 9.♖e2 (the d4 square is occupied by the bishop so the knight is unable to disturb the white queen, but other problems appear) 9...♘xc3+! (nipping in the bud the idea of ♘d5) 10.bxc3 d6 11.0-0 (11.♖e3) 11...g5! 12.♖e3 f6 13.♖g3 ♖h7 14.♘f3 ♘g7 15.♙e1 ♘g6 16.♘e3 ♘e7 17.c4 b6. We see that Black's play is very simple, while for White it's much more difficult to come up with something substantial.

### 9.♘d5 d6!



The computer does not see this move, or to put it more precisely, does not appreciate its true value.

Another attempt to leave the c7 pawn unprotected was made in G.Mohr-Leventic, Pula 1997. After 9...♘f6, instead of the correct 10.♘xc7+, White opted for 10.♘xf6+ gxf6 11.0-0 d6 12.♘h1 ♘e7 and lost in 20 moves. Meanwhile the capture on c7 was a right decision. In the event of 10...♘d8 11.♘xa8 Black has no resources left for a successful attack e.g. 11...♘b3 (11...♘g4 12.♙f1) 12.0-0 ♘g4 (12...♘xa1 13.♘e3) 13.♖xg4! ♖xg4 14.axb3+-.

### 10.♘e3?!

Correct was 10.♘e3 with unclear play. And 10.♘xc7+ won't do in view of 10...♘f8! (10...♘d8?! 11.♘xa8 ♘g4 12.♖d2 threaten-

ing 13.♖g5+) 11.♟xa8 ♕g4 12.♙g5!?

(12.♚d3 ♜f3+ 13.♜d1 ♞e1+!-+; 12.♚d2 ♙f3) 12...♚xg5 13.♚d2 ♚h4 14.c3 ♙f3! and Black's minor pieces are stronger than White's rooks.

**10...♟f6 11.c3 ♙g4 12.♟xg4?**

12.♚d3 ♜f3+ 13.♜e2!!∞ – hats off to Mr Fritz!

**12...♟xg4 13.♚f1 ♞e6?**

GM Plachetka gave a winning line 13...♟xf2! 14.♚xf2 ♞b3 15.♚f3 ♚xf2+ 16.♚xf2 ♙xf2+ 17.♜xf2 ♟xa1 18.b3 a5 19.♙b2 ♙c2 20.♙f1 ♞b4! 21.cxb4 axb4-+.

**14.♚e2 ♟xh2 15.♚h1 ♜e7 16.♜d1 ♚h8 17.f3 ♚g3 18.♙d2 ♙f2! 19.♙f1 ♚h4 20.♚d3 ♟c5 21.♚e2 ♟xf3 22.♚xh4 ♟xh4 23.♜c2 ♟f3 24.♚d1 ♟xd2 25.♚xd2 ♙e3**

A draw was agreed here, even though Black could still play for win.

The first ever registered game in the 3...h5 variation took place in the 4th match game Mieses-Marshall.

□ Jacques Mieses  
 ■ Frank Marshall  
 Berlin 1908

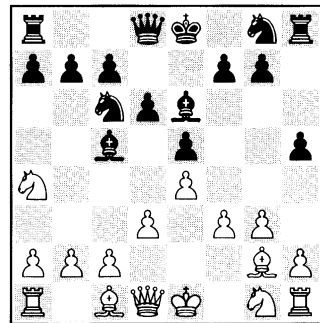
**1.e4 e5 2.♟c3 ♙c5 3.g3 ♟c6 4.♙g2 h5 5.d3**

There have been several games where Black voluntarily stopped pushing his h-pawn. Maybe such a strategy lacks logic, or consistency, but it does not necessarily lead to a bad result.

– 5.♟f3 d6 6.♟a4 ♟ge7 7.d3 f6 8.0-0 a6 9.♟xc5 dxc5 10.♙e3 b6 11.a3 g5 12.♞e1 ♟g6 13.b4 cxb4 14.axb4 h4 (after 14...♟xb4 15.d4 (or 15.c3 ♟c6 16.d4) White takes the initiative, although the position is far from clear) 15.b5 ♟d4 16.bxa6, Turov-Acs, Budapest 1997, 16...♟xa6∞.

– 5.h3 d6 6.d3 ♟ge7 7.♟ge2 ♙e6 8.♟a4 (my school friends' *idée fixe* 8.0-0 ♚d7 9.♜h2 comes into serious consideration. True, in case of 9...0-0-0 10.f4 f6 the kingside offensive is not that dangerous) 8...♚d7 9.♟xc5 dxc5 10.♙e3 b6 11.f4 f6 12.♚d2 0-0-0 13.0-0-0?! (13.a3; 13.f5 ♙f7 14.0-0) 13...♟xa2!? 14.b3 ♞b4 15.♜b2 ♙xb3! 16.cxb3 (perhaps better is 16.♜xb3 ♚e6+ 17.♜c3! – but not 17.c4 ♚xd3+ 18.♚xd3 ♟xd3 19.♚xd3 ♟c6) 16...♟xd3+ 17.♜b1 ♚b5 18.♚a2? (18.♚c2 ♞b4 19.♚c4 ♚xc4 20.bxc4 ♟ec6) 18...c4 19.♚a4 ♚xb3+ 20.♚xb3 cxb3 21.♚d2 c5 and the avalanche swept White away, Popchev-Mitkov, Skopje 1991.

**5...d6 6.♟a4 ♙g4 7.f3 ♙e6**



**8.♞e2**

More natural is 8.♟xc5 dxc5 9.f4, and if 9...♙g4, then the odd-looking 10.♚d2 – compare this to Morozevich's move ♚d7 in the Albin Counter-Gambit (see Chapter 5: Morozevich's Pet Line in the Albin).

**8...h4 9.♟xc5 dxc5 10.♙e3 h3 11.♙f1**  
 The penetration at h3 is not always an achievement. True, it leads to the bishop's humiliating withdrawal to its initial position, but later on the pawn may become a weakness as happens in some lines of the Modern Benoni.

**11...♚e7 12.g4 0-0-0**



Stronger was 12...c4!

**13.b3 g6**

Here 13...d4 suggested itself. Probably Marshall disliked this move in view of another humble retreat: 14.dg1! and the h3 pawn is doomed.

**14.♖d2**

14.dg1 f5 15.♗xh3 fxe4 16.fxe4 ♖d7.

**14...f5 15.gxf5 gxf5 16.exf5 ♗d5 17.♗g5 ♖f6 18.♞e3 ♞d6**

The immediate 18...d4 was simpler and better.

**19.0-0-0 ♖d4 20.♖xd4 cxd4 21.♞f2 ♞a3+**

The whole idea of the queenside offensive is dubious.

By sticking to his central strategy – 21...♞df8! – Black could have maintained a good position.

**22.♞b1 ♞d6 23.♗c1 ♞a5 24.♞g1 ♞a6 25.a3 ♗c6 26.♞e1! ♞c5 27.♞b4! ♞xb4?**

Better was 27...♞d5.

**28.axb4 ♗xf3 29.♞e1+**

The weakness of Black's pawns secures White a clear edge in the ending.

**29...e4?!**

29...d5 30.♗d2.

**30.dxe4 ♗xe4 31.♗xa6 bxa6 32.♗g5 ♖d5 33.♞b2 ♗g2 34.♞e5**

And White won.

□ Sandor Rosta

■ Tamas Halasz

Hungary tt 1992

**1.e4 e5 2.♖c3 ♗c5 3.g3 ♖c6 4.♗g2 h5 5.d3 h4**

I believe this should be considered main continuation.

**6.♖d5**

The game Suarez-Fucek, Buenos Aires 1993, saw 6.♖f3 d6 7.♗g5 f6 8.♗e3 h3

9.♗f1 ♗g4 10.♗e2 ♖ge7 11.♗xc5 dxc5 12.♞d2 (in this position 12.♖xe5? is a bad idea – 12...♗xe2 13.♖xc6 ♗xd1 14.♖xd8 ♗f3–+) 12...♞d7 13.0-0-0 ♗xf3 14.♗xf3 ♖d4 15.♗e2 b5 (15...0-0-0) 16.♞b1? (a retreat for the knight should have been prepared with 16.♞df1 b4 17.♖d1) 16...b4 17.♖d5 ♖xd5 18.exd5 ♞xd5 and Black was simply a pawn up.

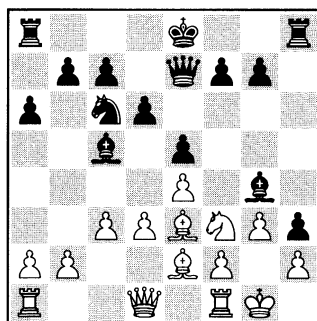
**6...d6 7.c3 a6 8.♖f3**

In Dominguez-Isaev, Moscow Olympiad 1994, White transposed the game into another subdivision of our classification by playing 8.g4. Black, however, obviously thought he was still in the 'White allows the opponent to play h4-h3' type of positions. (That at least is my subjective explanation.) This misunderstanding led to the venturesome 8...h3?! (8...♖ge7=) 9.♗xh3 (9.♖xh3 was good as well) 9...♖ce7 10.♖e3 d5 11.♗g2 d4 12.♖f5 dxc3 13.♖xg7+ ♞f8 14.♖f5 cxb2?! 15.♗xb2 ♖g6 16.♖f3 ♖f4? (16...♗xf5 17.gxf5 ♖f4) 17.♗xe5! ♖xd3+ (17...♖xg2+ 18.♞f1 f6 19.♗g3+–) 18.♞e2 ♗xf5 19.♞xd3! ♗d7 and here White could have terminated the game by 20.♞ad1! (in the game 20.a4 f6 was played, and Black even won) 20...♗b5 21.♞xb5! winning.

**8...h3 9.♗f1 ♗g4**

The alternative 9...♖ge7 is more flexible.

**10.♗e3 ♖ge7 11.♗e2 ♞d7 12.♖xe7 ♞xe7 13.0-0**



**13...♙xf3?!**

A positional mistake. Without the light-squared bishop the drawbacks of the having the pawn on h3 become evident. After 13...♙xe3 14.fxe3 ♙d7 the position would have been equal.

**14.♙xf3 ♙xe3 15.fxe3 ♖g5 16.♖e2±**

White doubles the rooks along the f-file, puts the bishop on g4 and stands better. In conclusion, Black should be careful before advancing his h-pawn to h3. Indeed, sometimes it's more favourable to keep the pressure on the kingside and to be able to exchange on g3.

White seldom takes on h4 with the pawn, but it happened once in one of my own games. Naturally I'm unable to pass it over in silence.

□ **Sergey Pestov**

■ **Maxim Notkin**

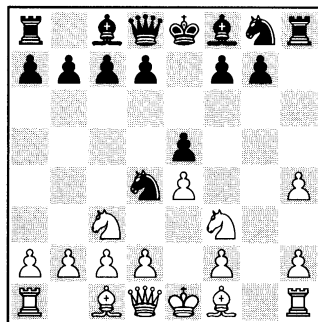
Moscow 1994

**1.e4 e5 2.♗c3 ♗c6 3.g3 h5**

The game Vorotnikov-Hennings, Leipzig 1979, saw 3...♙c5 4.♙g2 h5 5.♗f3 h4 6.gxh4 d6 7.h3 ♗ge7 8.d3 ♗g6 9.♙g5 f6 10.♙e3 ♙xe3 11.fxe3 ♗xh4 12.♗xh4 ♖xh4 13.d4 when the position is roughly equal. Black has a better pawn formation but the opponent's spatial advantage hampers the manoeuvres of his pieces. After 13...♖e7 14.♖d2 ♖f7 15.d5 ♗d8 16.♖f2 Black made an inaccurate move 16...g5?! weakening the squares f6 and f5 which allowed White to get a slight edge by 17.0-0-0 a6 18.♗e2±.

Note that after 6...♖xh4 White will not gain material. He continues to develop the pieces as follows: 7.d3 ♖h8 8.♙g5 f6 9.♙e3 ♙b6 10.♖e2 d6 11.0-0-0. The game Bastjanic-Zelic, Pula 1994, is worth studying a bit more as White won with the help of a nice queen sacrifice – 11...♙g4 12.h3 ♙h5 13.h4 ♗ge7 (13...♗d4! 14.♙xd4 ♙xd4 15.♖d2 ♙b6) 14.♗dg1 ♗g6 15.♙h3 ♗f4?!

16.♙xf4! ♗d4? 17.♗xd4! ♙xe2 18.♗cxe2 ♙xd4 19.♗xd4 exd4 20.♖xg7 with a decisive attack.

**4.♗f3 h4 5.gxh4 ♗d4!?****6.d3**

The line 6.♗xe5 ♖f6! (6...d6 7.♗f3 ♙g4 8.♙e2 ♗xe2 9.♖xe2 ♖xh4 10.♖g1±) 7.♗g4 ♗f3+ 8.♙e2 ♖f4 is too crazy.

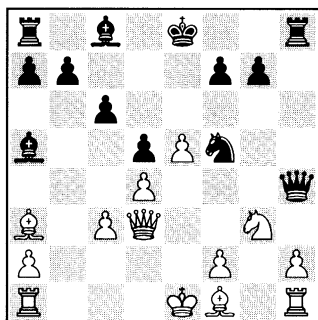
**6...c6 7.♗xd4 exd4 8.♗e2 ♙c5 9.c3**

White unblocks his opponent's dark-squared bishop intending to set a new barrier immediately.

Nonetheless 9.♖g1!? was stronger trying to seize the initiative on the kingside.

**9...dxc3 10.bxc3 ♖xh4 11.♗g3 ♗e7 12.d4 ♙b6 13.♙a3?!**

Better is 13.e5. The text move allows Black to solve his last problem – the light-squared bishop's development.

**13...d5 14.e5 ♗f5 15.♖d3 ♙a5!**

With this trick Black avoids the exchange on g3 which would have improved White's pawn chain.

**16.0-0-0 ♖f4+ 17.♞d2 ♕e6 18.♔b2 0-0-0 19.♜xf5 ♕xf5 20.♖e3 ♖e4!?**

This move falls into the same category as 15...♕a5. I don't want to help my opponent improve his pawn structure.

**21.♖xe4 ♕xe4 22.♞g1 g6 23.h3 ♔d7 24.♞g4 ♕f5 25.♞f4 ♔e6**

The ending is clearly better for Black thanks to the weakness of the h3 pawn. Before winning it, only a little preparation is needed to restrict White's possible counterplay.

**26.h4 ♞dg8 27.♕d3 ♕d8 28.c4 ♞xh4 29.♕xf5+ gxh4 30.cxd5+ cxd5 31.♞xh4 ♕xh4**

And Black realized his extra pawn.

I'll use another game of mine as a bridge to the final part of this survey. It was one of the greatest frustrations in my chess career.

□ Vladislav Vorotnikov

■ Maxim Notkin

Moscow 1997

**1.e4 e5 2.♞c3 ♝c6 3.g3 h5**

Here my experienced opponent suddenly plunged into deep thought. Two years before this game I had a bad position against Marinkovic (see below), and, therefore, I considered 4.h3 as the most unpleasant move for Black. When Vorotnikov finally played.

**4.♞f3**

and I replied

**4...h4**

I was quite satisfied as for some reason I was sure that here White had no other option except for 5.gxh4 and 5.♞xh4. And I was ready to play these positions. The next move shocked me.

**5.g4!**

Played after another 15 or 20 minutes of hesitation. All my anticipation of sacrifices and attacks collapsed in the twinkling of an eye. In the following positional play I made some mistakes and like two years ago found myself in troubles.

**5...♕c5 6.h3 a6**

A needless move, for, after 6...♞ge7, 7.♞a4 is harmless in view of 7...♕d6.

**7.d3 d6**

Again better is 7...♞ge7 and in the event of 8.♕g5 Black has 8...♞d4! saving the h4 pawn.

**8.♕g5 f6 9.♕e3 ♞d4**

After 9...♞ge7 I did not like 10.d4, but 9...♕xe3 10.fxe3 ♕e6 11.d4 ♕f7 was preferable.

**10.♕xd4 exd4**

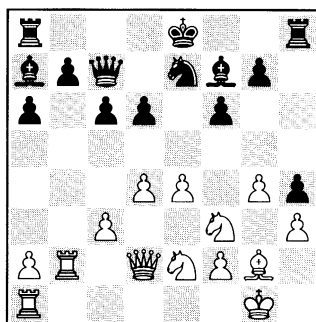
Showing an excessive respect for the pair of bishops.

It is better to cede the one which capacity is reduced by its own pawns: 10...♕xd4 11.♞xd4 exd4 12.♞e2 c5 and White has only a small advantage.

**11.♞e2 c6 12.♕g2 ♞e7 13.♖d2 ♖b6**

**14.0-0 ♕e6 15.c3 dxc3 16.bxc3 ♖c7**

**17.d4 ♕a7 18.♞fb1 ♕f7 19.♞b2**



At this point a certain opinion about my position formed itself in my mind. To be honest it wasn't the first time I felt something similar when playing the 3...h5 line of the Vienna

Game. Here it is: 'I'm alright, all my pieces stands well or at least have good prospects, but what is this damned pawn doing at h4?!' I could have castled kingside, I could have done many useful things had this silly piece of wood remained at h7 where in fact it is destined to be! The game went

**19...♖d8**

Or 19...b5 20.a4 and Black is worse on both flanks.

**20.g5!? f5 21.exf5 ♖xf5 22.g6! ♙c4**

Dismal is 22...♗xg6 23.♖f4 ♙f7 24.♞e1+ ♖e7 25.♖g5+-.

**23.♞g5 ♞f8**

Only computers play 23...0-0 here.

**24.♖f4 ♖d7! 25.♙f1?**

In the event of 25.♖xh4 I planned to play 25...♖h6 (25...♖xh4 26.♞xh4 ♖c8 27.d5), but after 26.d5! cxd5 27.♞ab1 (premature is 27.♖e6 ♞xf2! 28.♞xf2 ♙xf2+ 29.♖xf2 ♞b6+ 30.♖d4? ♞b2+) 27...b5 28.♖e6! White wins the exchange as 28...♖xe6? loses the queen to 29.♞e1+ ♖d7 30.♞e7+. True, Black would have retained some counterchances, but objectively his position is bad. In the game after

**25...♙xf1 26.♞xf1 ♞de8**

I managed to draw somehow.

Let's search for samples of more successful play for Black in the lines where White meets h5-h4 with g3-g4.

□ Alexander Finkel

■ Zoltan Almasi

Bratislava 1993

**1.e4 e5 2.♖c3 ♖c6**

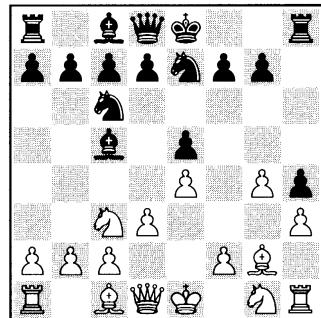
Mieses also won Game 8 in his match against Marshall, Berlin 1908: 2...♙c5 3.g3 ♖c6 4.♙g2 h5 5.h3 h4 6.g4 d6 7.♖a4 (7.d3 ♙e6 8.f4 exf4 9.♙xf4 ♖ge7 10.♖ge2 ♖g6 11.♙h2 ♖d4 12.♞d2 ♞d7 13.0-0-0 0-0-0 14.♖b1 ♖b8= Marinkovic-Markovic, Bel-

grade 1991) 7...♙e6 8.d3 g5? 9.c3 (Black is unable to prevent d3-d4 therefore his plans of a blockade along the dark squares fail. Perhaps Marshall thought that after ♖a4 Mieses would take the bishop?) 9...a6 10.♖f3 f6 11.d4! exd4 12.cxd4 ♙b4+ 13.♖c3 ♙c4 14.♞c2 ♞e7 15.♙d2 0-0-0 16.b3 ♙xc3 17.♙xc3 ♙f7 18.0-0 ♙g6 19.♖d2 d5 20.♞fe1 ♞d7 21.♞b2 ♖ge7 22.b4!± dxe4 23.♖xe4 ♙xe4 24.♙xe4 ♞d6 25.b5 axb5 26.♞xb5 ♖d5 27.♞ab1 ♖b6 (not 27...♖xc3?? 28.♙f5+, but 27...b6 was stronger) 28.d5 ♖a7 29.♞a5 ♖b8 30.♙d4 ♖ac8 31.♙c5 ♞d7 32.d6! ♖xd6 33.♞xb6! cxb6 34.♙xb6 ♖c8 35.♙f5 ♞d6 (35...♖xb6□ 36.♙xd7 ♖xd7+-) 36.♙xc8 ♖xc8 37.♞c1+ ♖d7 38.♞f5+ ♖e8 39.♞g6+ Black resigned. An excellent game!

**3.g3 h5 4.h3**

Another way of stopping the h-pawn – 4.h4 is not popular. Zarnicki-Akopian, Rio Gallegos 1986, went 4...d6 5.d3 ♙g4 6.♙e2 ♞d7 7.♙xg4 hxg4 8.♙e3 g6 9.♞d2 ♙h6 10.♙xh6 ♞xh6 11.♖d5 ♞h5 12.♖e2 f5 13.0-0-0 0-0-0 with an equal game.

In the next pair of examples two strong GMs were apparently confused by that deceptive move order that I faced in the game against Vorotnikov: 4.d3 h4 5.g4 ♙c5 6.h3 ♖ge7 7.♙g2



A) 7...♖d4 8.♖ge2 ♖xe2 9.♖xe2 ♙b6?! (9...d5) 10.f4 d6 11.d4! ♙e6 (11...exd4

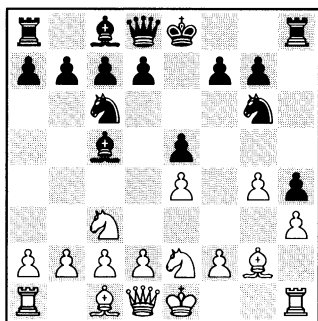
12.♖xd4 0-0 13.♗f3!? and the h4-pawn is weak) 12.♣d3 exd4 13.♗xd4 ♖c6 14.♗xc6 bxc6 15.♗d2 f6? (a decisive weakening) 16.e5! dxe5 (16...d5 17.f5 ♗c8 18.e6) 17.♗xc6+ ♖f8 18.f5 ♗f7 19.♗xa8 ♣xa8 20.0-0-0+- J.Pedersen-Aronian, Morso 2002.

B) 7...♗g6 8.♗e3 ♗b6 (8...d6!?) 9.♗ge2 d6 10.♣d2 ♗d4?! (10...♗e6) 11.♗xd4! exd4 12.♗d5 c6 13.♗xb6 ♣xb6 14.c3 dxc3 15.bxc3 (a clever exchange manoeuvre led to a position where White's pawn centre looks formidable) 15...♗d7 16.f4 0-0-0 17.d4 ♗e7 18.a4 g6 19.c4! (maybe it's not the strongest move but I attach the mark of exclamation for the fidelity to principle) 19...f5 20.exf5 gxf5 21.g5 ♗g6 22.0-0 and in the end White won, Cabe-Xu Jun, Manila 1991.

**4...h4**

I tested 4...♗c5, but, after 5.♗a4 ♗e7 6.♗g2 h4 7.g4, it turned out that the bishop takes the knight's square. My following play was not too impressive – 7...♗f6 (7...a6!?) 8.♗c3 ♗c5 9.d3 ♗d4 10.f4 exf4 11.♗xf4 c6 (11...d6) 12.♣d2 d5 13.e5 ♗h7?! (13...♗d7) 14.0-0-0 ♗e6 15.♗h2 ♗hf8 16.♗f3 ♗g6 17.d4 ♗b4 18.♗f1 a5?! 19.♣e3 a4 20.♗e2 a3 21.b3 and Black suffers from a lack of constructive ideas while White has various means of active play on the kingside, Marinkovic-Notkin, Tivat 1995.

**5.g4 ♗ge7 6.♗g2 ♗g6 7.♗ge2 ♗c5**



**8.d3**

In the event of 8.♗d5!? ♗ce7 9.♗xe7 ♣xe7 10.c3 ♗b6 11.d4 d6, correct is 12.0-0 and White has a stable edge.

Instead, the game Finkel-Tseitlin, Beer-Sheva 1997, saw 12.♣d3 0-0 13.0-0 c5 14.♖h1 cxd4 15.cxd4 ♣f6 (Finkel suggests 15...d5!?, but I don't think it solves all Black's problems) 16.g5! ♣e7 17.f4 exf4 18.♗xf4 ♗xf4 19.♣xf4 ♗e6? (19...♣xg5! 20.♣xf7 ♣g6 21.♣xf8+ ♖xf8± Finkel) 20.♣xh4±.

Analysing the situation I conclude that White's worst piece is the queen's knight. It hinders in building of the strong pawn centre by c2-c3 and d3-d4. That's why White is trying to exchange it. Hence, Black should not facilitate his opponent's task. So, in reply to 8.♗d5, the move 8...♗d4!? comes into consideration with unclear play.

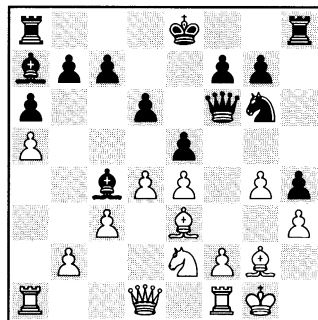
**8...♗d4 9.♗xd4 ♗xd4 10.♗e2 ♗b6 11.c3**

Here 11.d4 is somewhat impatient. After 11...exd4 12.f4 d6 13.♗xd4 ♣f6 14.♗e2 ♗d7 15.♣d3 Jonker-Klip, Dieren 1990, 15...0-0-0 16.g5 ♣e7 17.♗d2 a complicated position with mutual chances arises.

**11...♣f6 12.d4 d6 13.a4**

Simpler is 13.0-0.

**13...a6 14.♗e3?! ♗e6 15.a5 ♗a7 16.0-0 ♗c4!**



The first positional achievement – Black has prevented f2-f4.

17.♖e1 ♘f8!? 18.♗d2 ♘e6

From here the knight controls two important squares.

19.d5?!

White could keep the balance with 19.g5 ♗g6 20.f4 exf4 21.♘xf4 ♘xf4 22.♙xf4 0-0-0.

19...♙xe3 20.♗xe3 ♙xe2 21.dxe6 ♙c4 22.exf7+ ♗xf7

White is left with a bad bishop – his position is slightly worse.

23.♗g5 ♖h6 24.♖ad1 ♗e7

Here 24...♖f6!? 25.♗xh4 0-0-0 deserved attention with full compensation for the pawn.

25.♗e3

White could break free with 25.♗xe7+ ♘xe7 26.f4! equalizing.

25...♖f6 26.♙f1 ♙e6 27.♙e2 ♖f4 28.c4 ♘f8 29.♙g2

Missing one more possibility of active play – 29.b4 ♘g8 30.c5.

29...♙g8 30.b3 ♖af8 31.f3 ♗g5

32.♖d3 ♙d7 33.♖c3 ♙c6 34.♖f1 ♗f6

35.♙d3 ♙d7 36.♙e2 ♙h8 37.♖cc1

♗g5 38.♖c3 ♙e6

The last 7-8 moves are typical of time-trouble play.

39.b4 ♙g8 40.♖d1 ♗f6

The time control is passed and a tough finish begins.

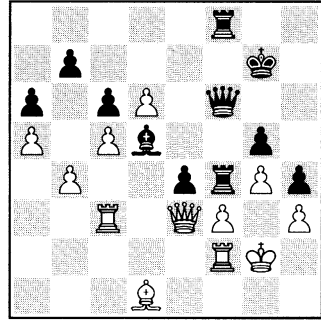
41.c5 d5! 42.exd5 e4! 43.d6

Clearly not 43.fxe4? ♖f2+ 44.♙g1 ♖xe2!.

43...c6! 44.♖f1 ♙d5 45.♖f2 g5

46.♙d1 ♙g7

Almasi unhurriedly improves the positions of his pieces. It reminds me of Kharlov-Topalov, Tripoli 2004, but with all the rooks on the board.



47.♙e2 ♙h6 48.♙d1 ♖f7 49.♙e2 ♗g7

50.♗c1? ♗e5?!

Immediately decisive was 50...exf3+ 51.♙xf3 ♗e5–+.

51.♙c4

White also loses after 51.♙h1 exf3 52.♙d3 (52.♙f1 ♖e4) 52...♖xb4–+.

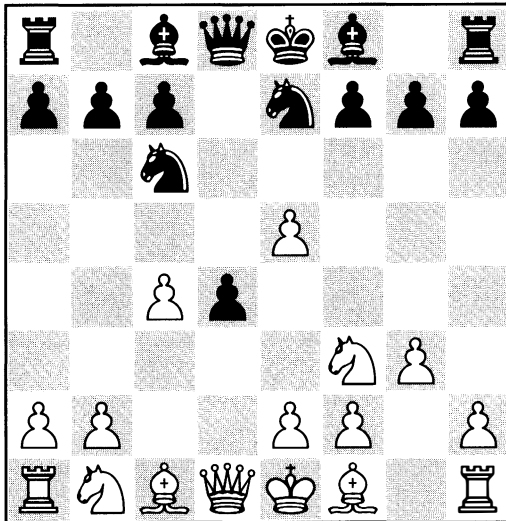
51...exf3+

0-1

# CHAPTER 5

*Jeroen Bosch*

## Morozevich's Pet Line in the Albin



NIC KEY VO 15.7

### The Sideline 5...Nge7

Alexander Morozevich is famous for his adventurous chess. In the 2004 Amber tournament he twice played the Albin Counter-Gambit. Now the Albin does not enjoy a very respectful reputation, but Morozevich's interpretation is well worth studying.

□ Boris Gelfand

■ Alexander Morozevich

Monaco (blindfold) 2004

#### 1.d4 d5 2.c4 e5

The Albin Counter-Gambit is not a common guest in games between world class players. Historically, perhaps only the first game of our eponymous hero fell into this category.

For it was in New York 1893 that Adolf Albin first played his daring gambit against none other than World Champion Emanuel Lasker. This debut could hardly be called a success, though, as after 3.dxe5 d4 4.♘f3 ♘c6 5.a3 ♗g4 6.h3 ♗xf3 7.gxf3 ♘xe5 8.f4 ♘c6?! (8...♘g6 had to be played) 9.♗g2 ♖d7 10.b4 a6 11.♗b2 White's game was preferable.

#### 3.dxe5 d4 4.♘f3 ♘c6 5.g3

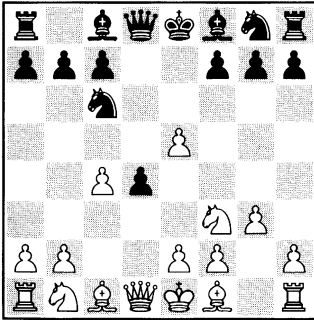
The strongest move at this stage and by far the most popular line. The alternatives 5.a3 and 5.♗bd2 are less critical.

After 5.a3 the move 5...♗e6 seems enough for near-equality. A virtually equal ending arises after 6.e3 dxe3 7.♖xd8+ ♖xd8

8.♙xe3 ♖ge7 9.♗c3 ♖g6 10.♗b5 ♚d7  
11.♗bd4 ♖gxe5 12.♗xe5 ♗xe5 13.♗xe6  
fxe6 14.♙e2 ♗d3+, forcing the exchange of  
White's bishop pair, as in Farago-Mestel,  
Belgrade 1982.

By analogy to our main game a set-up with  
5...♗ge7 comes into consideration. For ex-  
ample, 5...♗ge7 6.g3 ♖g6 7.♙g2 ♖gxe5  
8.♗bd2 ♙e7 9.0-0-0 (9...a5) 10.b4 d3 11.b5  
♗d4 with equal play, Pinter-Souleidis, Dort-  
mund 1998.

Stronger is 5.♗bd2, when a game  
Szilagy-Kadas, Hungary 2000, went  
5...♗ge7 (the main line is 5...♙g4) 6.a3 a5  
7.♗b3 (7.g3 may be met by 7...♗g6 or 7...a4)  
7...♗g6 8.♗bxd4 ♗cxe5 9.♙d2 (9.♗xe5  
♗xe5 10.♙f4, followed by 11.e3, looks much  
better) 9...c6 10.♙c2 ♙c5 11.♙c3 0-0  
12.0-0-0 ♙e7 13.♗f5 ♙xf5 14.♙xf5 ♗xf3  
15.gxf3 ♙xf2 and Black was slightly better.



### 5...♗ge7!?

In what is already a fairly uncommon gambit  
this is a sideline. Fans of the Albin Counter-  
Gambit usually try to checkmate their oppo-  
nents as soon as possible with the coffee-  
house set-up: ♙g4, ♙d7, 0-0-0, ♙h3 and h5.  
White's position is too solid, though, for  
such a one-sided strategy to succeed (with  
best play that is). White should remember  
one of the golden rules when playing against  
a gambit: 'return material in time'. Alterna-  
tively he may just crudely start an attack of

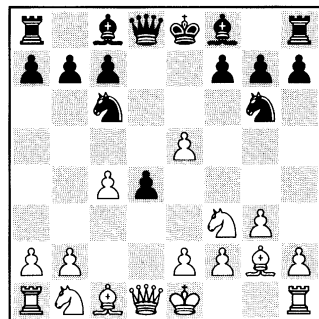
his own on the queenside where Black's king  
has found a not-too-safe haven. Two sample  
lines that are sort of mainstream Albin the-  
ory arise after 5...♙g4 (5...♙e6 is also played)  
6.♙g2 ♙d7 7.0-0:

– Here it would be nice if 7...♙h3 would  
work. However, now is the time to throw a  
spanner in the works with the standard 8.e6!.  
Since Black is forced to take this pawn with  
the bishop, White gains valuable time for de-  
veloping his own initiative. The game  
Dzindzichashvili-Manievich, Israelil Cham-  
pionship 1978, illustrates why this is known  
to favour White: 8...♙xe6 9.♙a4 0-0-0  
10.♚d1 a6 11.♗c3 ♗f6 12.♙g5 ♙e7  
13.♙xf6 ♙xf6 14.♗d5±.

– 7...0-0-0 8.♗bd2 h5 9.b4! (there is no need  
for 9. h4, White's counter-attack is very  
strong) 9...♗xb4 (9...♗xb4 10.a3 ♗a6  
11.♗b3 was also better for White in Van der  
Wiel-Tiviakov, Albin theme tournament,  
Groningen 2001) 10.♙a4 h4 11.♚b1 hxg3  
12.♚xb4 ♗xb4 13.♙xb4 ♙h3 14.fxg3, and  
White's minor pieces are stronger than  
Black's rook. More importantly, Black's at-  
tack is going nowhere.

### 6.♙g2 ♖g6

The whole point of 5...♗ge7 – Black simply  
wants to retrieve his gambit pawn. If he suc-  
ceeds, his advanced d4-pawn constitutes a  
fair trade-off against White's powerful g2  
bishop.





### 7. ♖g5

This is the most ambitious move. White develops with tempo and it is not immediately obvious how Black should reply.

The natural 7.0-0 deserves separate treatment. See the game Piskov-Mozny below. Two minor alternatives:

● Alekhine once played 7. ♖a4, and Black had no problems after 7... ♖b4+ 8. ♘bd2 0-0 9.0-0 Alekhine-Pires, Lisbon 1941. And now 9... a5!? – a suggestion of Raetsky and Chetverik – planning to take back the gambit pawn on e5 looks good.

● Possible is 7. ♖f4 ♘xf4! (the move order cannot be inverted, for after 7...f6? 8.exf6 ♘xf4 White has 9.f7+!) 8.gxf4 f6 9. ♘bd2 fxe5 10.fxe5 ♖f5, with a highly complicated game in Tiviakov-Ligterink, Albin theme tournament Groningen 2001.

### 7... ♖d7!

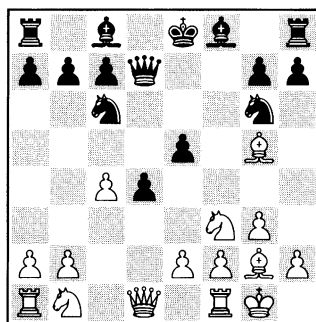
Morozevich (temporarily) blocks his own bishop. This odd-looking move is in fact far stronger than the natural response 7... ♖e7, for after 8. ♖xe7 Black must take back with the king (which has indeed been tried) in order not to remain a pawn down.

Maxim Chetverik (author of a book on the Albin Counter-Gambit together with Alexander Raetsky) has championed 7...f6!?. However, after 8.exf6 gxf6 9. ♖d2 Black's pawn structure is too compromised, with no clear dynamic compensation in sight.

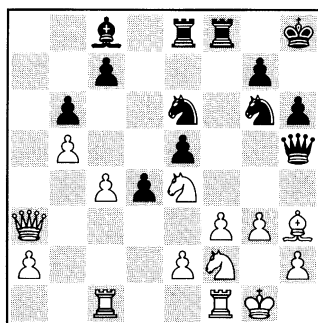
### 8.0-0

There is a main alternative here in the form of 8.e6!?. This well-known Albin ploy may well be White's best bet for a small advantage. As the d4 pawn needs protection Black must take back with the f-pawn on e6: 8...fxe6 9.0-0 e5.

Starting from this position there are two Morozevich efforts, the first one dating back to more than 10 years ago. Let's examine the games Krasenkow-Morozevich and Van Wely-Morozevich in detail:



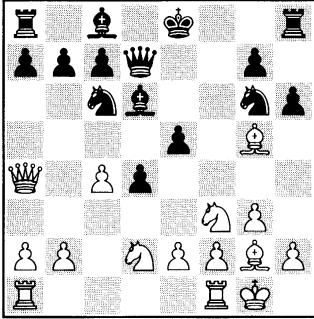
● 10. ♘bd2 h6 11. ♖h4 ♖e7 12. ♖xe7 ♖xe7 13. ♖c2 ♖f7 14. ♘e1 0-0 (play is about equal) 15. ♘d3 ♖h8 16.b4 ♖g4 17. ♖ae1 ♖ae8?! (17...a6 to prevent White's next is stronger) 18.b5 ♘d8 19. ♖a4± ♖f5 20. ♘e4 (the alternatives are also promising: 20. ♖xa7 ♖xe2 21. ♖xe2 ♖xd3 22. ♖fe1 and 23. ♖e4 is uncomfortable to meet; or 20.f3 ♖g5 21.e3) 20... ♖h5 21.f3 ♖e6 22. ♖c1 ♘f7 23. ♖xa7 ♖c8 24. ♖c5 ♘g5 25. ♘df2 ♘e6 26. ♖a3 b6 27. ♖h3!



(White has a huge advantage, so the young Morozevich sacs a piece) 27... ♘gf4 28.gxf4 ♘xf4 29. ♖xc8 ♘xe2+ 30. ♖g2 ♖xc8 31. ♘g3 ♖g6 32. ♖ce1 d3 33. ♖xe2 (returning material to end the complications) 33...dxe2 34. ♖e1 h5 35. ♖d3 ♖g5 36. ♘h3 ♖h6 37. ♖xe2+ h4 38. ♘f1 ♖cd8 39. ♖e4 ♖d4 40. ♖xe5 ♖g6+ 41. ♖g5 ♖d3 42. ♖h5+

♠g8 43.♠d2 ♖xc4 44.♠xd4 ♖xd4 45.♠g5 ♖d3 46.♠e3! ♠d8 47.♖f7+ ♜h8 48.♖h5+ ♜g8 49.♖f7+ ♜h8 50.♖e6 ♠a8 51.♜h3 ♖b1 52.♠f7+ ♜g8 53.♠g5+ ♜h8 54.a3 ♖d3 55.♠f7+ ♜h7 56.♠g5+ ♜h8 57.♠g4 ♠f8 58.♠e5 ♖f1+ 59.♜g4 1-0 Krasenkow-Morozevich, Podolsk 1993.

● 10.♖a4 ♠d6 (10...h6 11.♠d2 ♠e7 is quite reasonable) 11.♠bd2 h6



12.c5!? (an inspired answer) 12...♠f8 (12...♠xc5 13.♖c2 hxg5 14.♖xg6+ ♖f7 15.♖xf7+ ♜f7 16.♠xg5+±; 12...hxg5 13.cxd6 g4 14.♠g5 ♖xd6 15.♠c4, and Black's king will not find a safe place) 13.♠h4 a5!? (13...♠xc5?! 14.♖c2 ♠hx4 15.♠hx4 is a pawn up in an unenviable position) 14.a3 ♠a6?! (this is too much – 14...♖e6 15.b4 ♠d7 was better) 15.♠fe1 ♖f5 16.♠ac1 ♠e7 17.♠xe7 ♠xe7 18.e3 (White has started the middle game, whereas Black still has to finish the opening) 18...0-0 19.exd4 exd4 20.b4 (20.♖c4+ ♜h8 21.♠b3 nets a pawn) 20...axb4 21.♖b3+ ♜h8 22.axb4 b5! 23.cxb6ep ♠xb6 24.♖a3 ♖f7 25.♠c5 ♠d5? 26.b5?! (26.♠xd5! ♖xd5 27.b5+–) 26...♠cb4 27.♠e4 ♠f5 28.♠e5?! ♖e7 29.f4? ♠xe4 (29...♠c2!–+) 30.♠c4 ♠xf4? (30...♠xg2 31.♠g6+ ♠xg6 32.♠xe7 ♠xf4 33.♖xb4 ♠d5 34.♠e4! ♠h3+ 35.♜g2 ♠f4+ with a draw or 35...♠xe4+ 36.♜hx3 ♠f5 to play on) 31.♠xe4+– d3 32.♠g6+

♠xg6 33.♠xe7 ♠xe7 34.♖xb4 ♠d6 35.♠xc7 ♠f5 36.♠d7 ♠ff6 37.♠xd6 ♠xd6 38.♠f3 d2 39.♠d1 ♠d8 40.♖c5 ♠d6 41.♖c7 1-0 Van Wely-Morozevich, Monaco rapid 2004.

Theoretically there may not be much wrong with Black after 8.e6!?. However, considering Morozevich's practical results here it may well be the line you will encounter most when you start playing this SOS-line.

In practice the move 8.♖a4 has also been tried. White was better in Kachiani Gersinska-Sträter, German Bundesliga 1998/99, after 8...h6 9.♠f4 ♠xf4 10.gxf4 ♖g4!? 11.0-0 ♠d7 12.♖b3 ♖xf4!? (12...♠b8) 13.♖xb7 ♠b8 14.♖xc7 ♠xb2?! 15.♠bd2 ♠e7 16.♠fb1±.

However, on move 14 Black should play 14...♠c8! 15.♖b7 ♠b8.

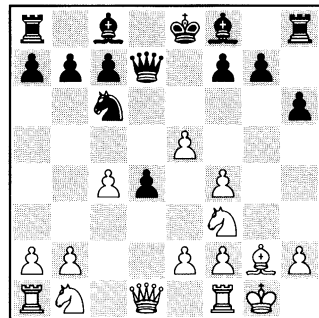
### 8...h6!N

This, and not his previous move, is Morozevich's crucial novelty. Black had previously tried 8...♠gxe5 9.♠bd2 ♠xf3+ 10.♠xf3 ♠c5. White is simply better here after 11.♠e1! Gärtner-Baumgartner, Austrian Team Championship 1995/96.

### 9...♠f4

Allowing Black to grasp the initiative with his forceful answer. Still whether you are playing blindfold or not, nobody likes to play a move like 9.♠c1.

### 9...♠xf4 10.gxf4



**10...g5! 11.♘bd2**

Taking twice on g5 does not come into consideration. After 11.fxg5 hxg5 12.♙xg5, both 12...♙xe5 and 12...♖g4 13.f4 ♖h4 are good.

**11...gxf4 12.♙e4**

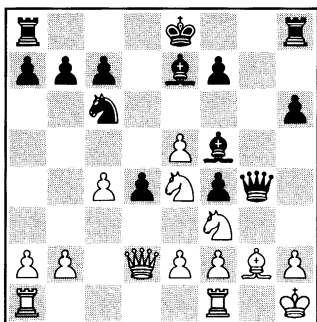
This is inaccurate; both 12.♙b3 or the immediate 12.♙h1 are stronger.

**12...♙e7 13.♖d2?**

A bad move, according to Morozevich. But Black also has a pleasant position after 13.♙h1 ♖g8.

**13...♖g4 14.♙h1 ♙f5**

Demonstrating that White's 12th and 13th moves were an unfortunate combination.



**15.♙xd4?**

This blunders a piece, but Black has a more than satisfactory position after any of the alternatives. For example:

A) 15.♙f6+ ♙xf6 16.exf6 0-0-0

B) 15.♙e1 0-0-0

C) 15.h3 ♖h5 16.♖xf4 ♙xh3 17.♙g3 ♖g4 18.♖xg4 ♙xg4, and Black is better in this ending.

**15...♙d8**

This is stronger than 15...0-0-0 as 16.♙xc6 ♙xd2 17.♙xe7+ is check! Still, even here Black is vastly superior after 17...♙d8 18.♙xf5 ♙d7.

**16.♙xf5**

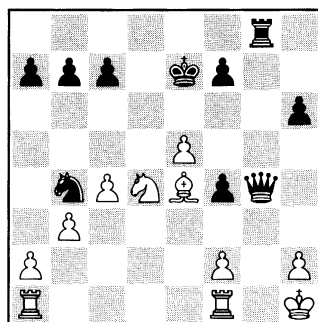
This queen sacrifice is not the best defence.

16.♙f6+ ♙xf6 17.♙xc6+ bxc6 18.exf6 c5 19.♖a5 cxd4 (19...♙xd4 20.♖xc5 ♙d7 21.♖c6!) 20.♖g1 ♖h3 21.♖xc7 offers White some slight chances of survival. After a forced sequence Black now obtains a decisive material advantage.

**16...♙xd2 17.♙xe7 ♙xe7 18.♙xd2 ♖xe2**

Black is winning. The following moves speak for themselves.

**19.♙f3 ♖g8 20.b3 ♙b4 21.♙d4 ♖g4 22.♙e4**



**22...♖g5**

This suffices for the win. It is perhaps only here that we notice that Morozevich is playing blindfold. Had he been permitted one cursory look at the board he would have played 22...♙d3, when White has no satisfactory defence against the threat of 23...♖g1 and 24...♙f2 mate!

**23.♖g1 ♖d7 24.♙f3 ♖xg1+ 25.♙xg1 ♙d3 26.♖g2 c6 27.♙h7 a5 28.♙h4 ♙xe5**

White resigned.

We have seen the merit of Morozevich's idea against White's most ambitious set-up: 7.♙g5. However, White has another simpler approach to play for an opening advantage: 7.0-0. Let's have a look at a special contribution by IM Mark Ginsburg.

**A Tightrope Act**

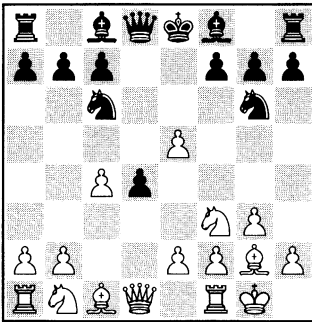
A contribution by Mark Ginsburg

□ Yury Piskov

■ Milos Mozny

Clichy 1990

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 e5 3.dxe5 d4 4.♘f3 ♖c6  
5.g3 ♗ge7 6.♙g2 ♗g6 7.0-0**



White simply castles and doesn't bother about the gambit pawn. His play is based on a slight lead in development. While Black immediately regains his material, he can achieve equality only by accurate play.

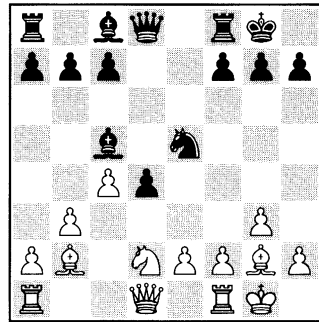
**7...♙e7?!**

Black should immediately win back his pawn with 7...♗gxe5! when there are two main continuations:

● Less testing now is 8.♖bd2 ♙e7 9.b3 0-0 10.♙b2 ♗xf3+ 11.♗xf3 ♙f6 12.♖d2. Burn-Schlechter, Barmen 1905, now went 12...♙g4?!, when White missed the powerful 13.♖f4! ♖d7 14.♖ad1 ♖ad8 15.e3 and White is on top. Instead of 12...♙g4 Black should play 12...♖e8! 13.♖ad1 ♙g4 14.♖f4 ♖xe2 15.♙xd4 ♙xf3 16.♙xf6 ♖xf6 17.♖xf6 gxf6 18.♙xf3 ♖xa2 with an equal ending.

● More to the point is 8.♗e5 ♗xe5 9.b3! (aiming to transpose to our main game Pis-

kov-Mozny. Not active enough is 9.♗d2 ♙e7 10.♗f3 ♗xf3+ 11.♙xf3 0-0 12.♙f4 Lautier-Raetsky, ACP blitz 2004. Instead of the game continuation 12...c5?!, Black has 12...♙h3 13.♖e1 c6 with equal chances) 9...♙c5! (not 9...♙e7 10.♙b2 ♙f6 11.♗d2 c5 12.♗e4 ♙e7 13.e3 and we've transposed to Piskov-Mozny) 10.♙b2 (the natural continuation, 10.b4 ♙e7 is nothing special for White) 10...0-0 11.♗d2



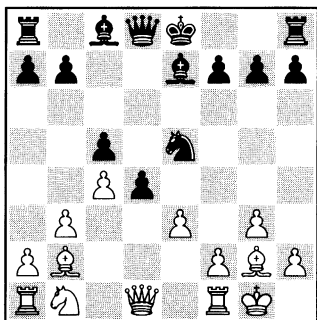
This is the critical position. If Black is not careful, White will obtain an edge. The following lines illustrate the difficulties that Black faces:

- 11...♙b6 12.b4!±
- 11...♙g4? 12.♗e4±
- 11...f5?! 12.a3 a5 13.b4!±
- 11...a6 12.♗e4 ♙a7 13.e3±

Fortunately, there is one move that saves the day. Black has 11...a5! and I cannot see more than equality in variations stemming from this move.

**8.b3 ♗gxe5 9.♗xe5 ♗xe5 10.♙b2 ♙f6**

Ideally, Black would like to play 10...c5 here. Unfortunately, the tactics are against him. White can exploit his small lead in development with the thematic 11.e3! (11.♙e4? ♖b6 12.♖c2 h5 gave Black a good position in Babula-Mozny, Czech Republic 1994)



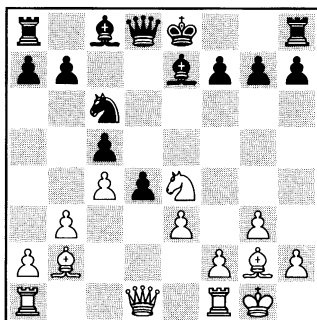
● 11...♗g4?! works well after 12.f3? ♗f5 13.e4 (13.exd4? ♘d3) 13...♗e6 with equality. Far stronger is 12.♖d2 when 12...♘f3+ 13.♗xf3 ♗xf3 14.exd4 leaves White clearly on top.

● So Black is forced to play 11...♗f6 12.exd4 cxd4 13.♘d2 when White is ahead in development, has a target on d4, and stands better. A sample line is: 13...♗g4 14.♖b1! ♖d7 15.f4! ♘c6 16.♞e1+ ♗f8 (not 16...♗e7?? 17.♗a3+-) with a huge edge for White.

**11.♘d2 c5 12.♘e4**

Driving back the bishop, which prepares his next thematic break.

**12...♗e7 13.e3! ♘c6**



**14.♘xc5!**

With this powerful blow Piskov optimally uses his edge in development.

**14...♗xc5 15.exd4 ♘xd4?**

The only way to limit the damage was 15...♗e7! 16.d5 ♘b4 17.a3 ♘a6 18.♗xg7 ♖g8 19.♗d4 and White is clearly better, but not outright winning as in the game.

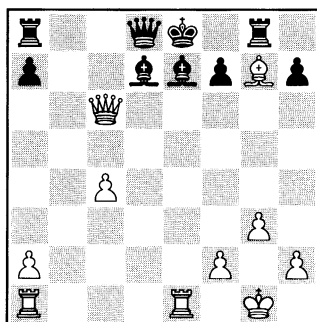
**16.b4 ♗xb4**

Or 16...♗b6 17.c5.

**17.♖a4+ ♘c6 18.♗xc6+ bxc6**

**19.♗xg7! ♖g8 20.♖xc6+ ♗d7**

**21.♞f1+ ♗e7**



**22.♞xe7+ ♖xe7**

22...♗xe7 23.♖f6+ ♗e8 24.♞e1+ ♗e6 25.♞xe6+ fxe6 26.♖xe6+-.

**23.♖xa8+ ♖d8 24.♖e4+ ♖e7**

**25.♖xh7 1-0**

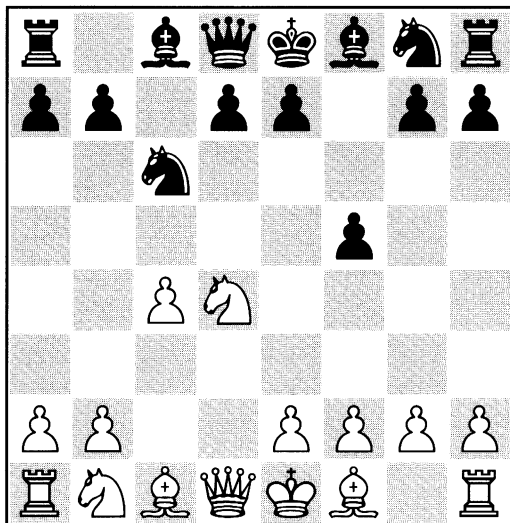
A crushing win by Piskov!

So, after 7.0-0 Black should avoid the disasters of Piskov-Mozny, and perform a tightrope act by means of 7...♘gxe5 8.♘xe5 ♘xe5 9.b3 ♗c5 10.♗b2 0-0 11.♘d2 a5! to gain equality. Nobody said that playing the Albin Counter-Gambit was easy!

## CHAPTER 6

*Michal Krasenkow*

# The Dutch in the English?



NIC KEY EO 49.7

### Combining ...c5 and ...f5

#### 1. ♘f3 c5 2.c4

This order of moves is often used by players aiming for solid play, without major risks. These players want to avoid the Benko Gambit, the Modern Benoni and other double-edged openings. After

#### 2... ♘c6 3.d4 cxd4 4. ♘xd4

it is not easy for Black (especially if he wants to win) to complicate matters, either in the Maroczy system (4...g6 5.e4) or in the classic line (4...♘f6 5.♘c3 e6 and now, say, 6.a3). However, he has another option. Admittedly, it is a risky one, but it will set White a real positional challenge.

#### 4...f5!?

Black prevents the Maroczy set-up (e2-e4) and now intends to play ...g7-g6. The f5 pawn can be useful in future play (similarly to the Dutch Defence, Black can start a kingside attack). The question is: Can White make use of the tempo Black spends in such a careless way?

An important thing to point out is that White should now give up 'solidness' and play actively to refute Black's set-up!

I am ashamed to admit my own failure to solve the problems when I faced this move in my game against Nigel Short in Round 2 of the FIDE World Championship in Libya 2004.

The provocative 4...f5 was applied for the first time back in 1928 by German IM Kurt Richter. However, he failed to demonstrate any worthy ideas, gave up a pawn and quickly lost (see below). In the nineties the bishop pawn lunge was picked up by Latvian IM (now GM) Normunds Miezis, who developed it into an orderly system.

Some of his followers have tried another move order: 2...g6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♟xd4 f5!?, which generally led to the same positions. Here are two games in which that didn't happen:

● Dragomaretsky-Pestov, Moscow 1990: 5.♟c3 ♟g7 6.e4 fxe4 7.♟xe4 ♖a5+ 8.♟c3 ♟f6 9.♟b3 ♜e5+ 10.♟e2 0-0 11.0-0 ♟e4 12.♟xe4 ♜xe4 13.♟f3 ♜f5 14.♜e2 ♟c6 15.♟e4 ♜f6 16.♞b1 d6 17.♟d2 ♜h4 18.♟d5+ ♟h8 19.♟c3 with a positional plus for White.

● Zhachev-Pestov, Moscow 1990: 7...♟c6 8.♟b3 (8.♟e3 ♜a5+ 9.♟c3 – see below) 8...♟f6 9.♟xf6+ ♟xf6 10.♟e2 b6 11.0-0 ♟b7 12.♞b1 ♜c7 13.♟e3 ♟e5 14.♟d4 ♜c6 15.f3 d6 16.♞f2 0-0 with complex play.

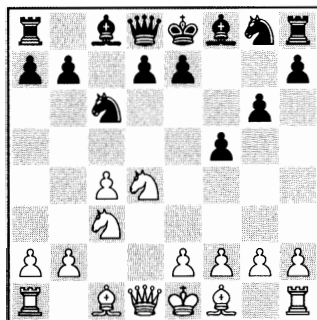
Back to the diagrammed position. White has two major plans depending on the way he develops his f1 bishop. Of course, developing it to g2 is more ambitious than to e2. White can also start with 5.♟c3 and define his plan on the next move. Let us first divide the material into two main lines:

- A) 5.♟c3
- B) 5.g3

Nothing special is gained by 5.e3 (not followed by ♟c3). There has been only one game with this plan, in which Black had no problems: 5...g6 6.♟e2 ♟g7 7.♟xc6 dxc6 8.0-0 ♟f6 9.♜c2 0-0 10.♟a3 ♟e6 11.c5 ♟d5 12.♞d1 ♜c7 13.♟d2 ♟e4 Srebrnic-Grabics, Punat 2003.

### Variation A

5.♟c3 g6



In the first game played with this system Black just gave up the f5 pawn, which hardly deserves following: 5...♟f6? 6.♟xf5 g6 7.♟e3 ♟g7 8.g3 b6 9.♟g2 0-0 10.0-0 ♟b7 11.♞b1 Kostic-Richter, Berlin 1928.

After 5...g6, White is at the crossroads:

- A1) 6.e4
- A2) 6.g3
- A3) 6.e3

The following two moves were proposed by WGM S.Prudnikova but have not been tested in practice yet:

- 6.♟f4!? d6 7.♟d5 ♟g7 8.e3
- 6.♟xc6 dxc6 7.♜xd8+ ♟xd8 8.♟f4 ♟g7 9.0-0-0+ ♟e8 10.♜c2 e5 11.♟g5.

She evaluates the position as slightly better for White in both cases but I am sure GM Miezis has a different opinion on this subject! In the first case I don't see any achievements for White after 8...♟f6 (the f4 bishop is placed extremely awkwardly). In the second case – what is White going to do after 11...h6 as 12.♞d8+ ♟f7 is senseless (the rook will be pushed back on the next move)? In the game Prudnikova-Kalevic, Belgrade 1999, she played 6.h4 ♟g7 7.♟xc6 dxc6

8.♖xd8+ (8.♖b3!? e5 9.♗d2 ♘e7 10.0-0-0 ♖c7 11.e4 is recommended by Prudnikova – why not 9...♗f6 ?) 8...♗xd8 9.♗d2 e5 10.g3 ♗f6 11.e4 ♖e8 12.♗g2 ♗e6 13.b3 ♗c7 14.♖c1 ♖ad8 15.♗d5+ ♗b8 16.♗xf6 ♗xf6 17.♗c3 fxe4 18.♗xe4 ♗f5 19.♗xf5 gxf5 20.♗e2 ♗c8 21.♖cd1 ♖d7 22.♖he1 draw.

**Variation A1**

**6.e4**

Black is well-prepared for this attack!

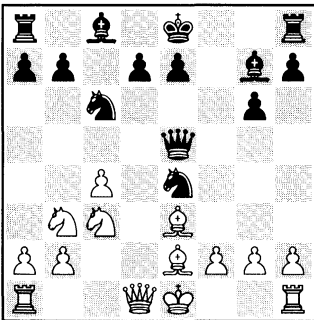
**6...fxe4 7.♗xe4 ♖a5+ 8.♗c3 ♗g7 9.♗e3 ♗f6**

9...♗h6!? is also possible although in the following game White obtained an advantage, due to Black's inaccurate play: 10.♗e2 0-0 11.0-0 ♖e5?! 12.♗f3 ♖b8?! 13.♖d5+! ♗h8 14.♖e4 ♗f5 15.♖ad1! A.Rodriguez-Leyva, Matanzas 1998. Instead of 11...♖e5?!, GM A.Rodriguez recommends 11...♗xd4! 12.♗xd4 ♗f5 13.♗b5 (or 13.♗e3 ♗xe3 14.fxe3 ♖xf1+ 15.♗xf1 d6 16.♖d5+ ♗g7) 13...♗fxd4 14.♗xd4 ♖e5 15.♗xc6 bxc6 and Black is OK.

**10.♗b3**

White is 10.♗e2?! ♗e4 11.♖d3 ♗xc3 12.bxc3 0-0 13.h4?? ♗xd4 14.♗xd4 e5 and Black wins a piece, Mirkovic-Nestorovic, Niska Banja 2004.

**10...♖e5! 11.♗e2 ♗e4**



As distinct from the above game Dragoma-

retsky-Pestov, this manoeuvre now brings Black a real benefit.

**12.♗xe4**

The unnatural 12.♗a4?! proved a bad choice in Kuenitz-Miezis, Bad Wildbad 2000: 12...d6 13.0-0 0-0 14.♗f3 ♗f5 15.♖d5+ ♗h8 16.♖ad1 ♖xd5 17.cxd5 ♗e5 with initiative for Black.

**12...♖xe4 13.0-0 ♗xb2**

This is the difference!

**14.♗c5 ♖h4 15.♖b1 ♗d4 16.♗xb7**

Regaining the pawn but allowing Black to complete his development; 16.g3 is harmless due to 16...♖f6 17.♗e4 ♖e5.

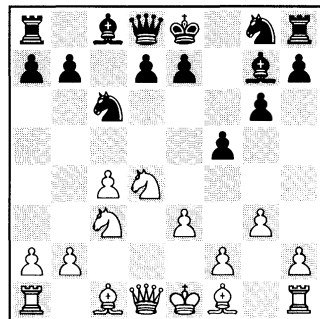
**16...0-0 17.♗f3 ♗e5 18.g3 ♖f6 19.♗d5+ e6**

Draw, Collas-Khamrakulov, Campillos 2004.

**Variation A2**

**6.g3 ♗g7 7.e3**

To 7.♗c2 Black can now reply with 7...♗xc3+!? destroying the white pawn structure (quite a typical method in such positions), e.g. 8.bxc3 ♖a5 9.♗e3 d6 10.♗g2 ♗d7 11.0-0 ♖c8 12.c5?! (this sacrifice doesn't bring White any profits) 12...♖xc5 13.c4 ♗f6 14.♗b2 0-0 15.♖c1 b6 16.♗d5 ♗e4! 17.e3 ♖f7 18.♖e2 ♖a5 19.♖fd1 ♖a4 20.f3 ♗c5 21.♗a1 h6 22.♖b2 ♗h7 and White's compensation for the pawn is in doubt, Loncar-Doric, Rijeka 2004.



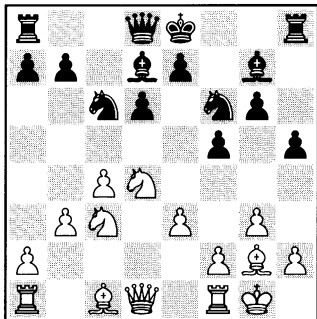


Black must now develop his light-squared bishop. Accordingly, he has two plans:

**8...dxc6 9.♖xd8+ ♜xd8 10.♙d2 ♘f6 11.♙g2 ♙b7**

**Variation A21**

**7...d6 8.♙g2 ♙d7 9.0-0 ♘f6 10.b3 h5!?**



An original idea, typical for GM Normunds Miezis. Jackelen-Miezis, Bonn 1995, continued instead: 10...0-0 11.♙b2 g5 12.♖c2! ♖c8 13.♞fe1 (preventing ...f4) 13...♞f7 14.♘d5 ♘g4 15.♞ad1 ♘xd4 16.♙xd4 ♙xd4 17.exd4 e6 18.h3 ♘h6 19.♘c3 and White is clearly better.

**11.♙b2 h4 12.♘d5 hxg3 13.hxg3 ♖f7 14.♘xf6 ♙xf6 15.♘xc6 ♙xc6 16.♙xf6 ♖xf6 17.e4**

Looks formidable but Black holds his ground.

**17...♖d7 18.f4 fxe4 19.♖d4+ ♖f7 20.f5?**

A senseless pawn sacrifice.

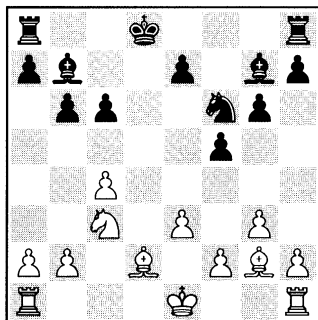
**20...gxf5 21.b4 e3 22.♙d5+ ♖g6 23.♞ae1 e5**

with a clear advantage for Black in Schuurman-Miezis, Winterthur 2001. This looks fine from Black's point of view, but what was Miezis going to do after 11.h4! ... ?

**Variation A22**

**7...b6 8.♘xc6**

Apparently, the only way to prevent Black's comfortable development.



**12.e4**

12.0-0-0 ♖c7 13.e4 can be met with 13...♘g4! 14.♞hf1 ♞ad8 15.exf5 gxf5 16.♞de1 e5 17.h3 ♘h6 18.f4 e4 19.g4 ♙a6! with good counterplay, Fahrner-Miezis, Graz 1999.

**12...c5**

Also interesting is 12...e5!?

**13.0-0-0 ♖e8 14.♘d5 ♖f7?! 15.exf5 gxf5 16.♙c3 ♞ad8**

16...e6? 17.♘xf6 ♙xg2 18.♞d7+ ♖g6 19.♞e1!

**17.♞he1! e6 18.♙xf6 ♙xf6 19.♘xf6 ♙xg2 20.♘d7! ♖e7 21.♘e5**

with a clear advantage for White in Kenigs-Miezis, Bonn 1995. Instead of the obvious (but inaccurate) 14...♖f7, 14...♞d8!, preventing 15.exf5, was much more precise. In case of 15.♙c3 there follows 15...fxe4. Black appears to be fine in this line.

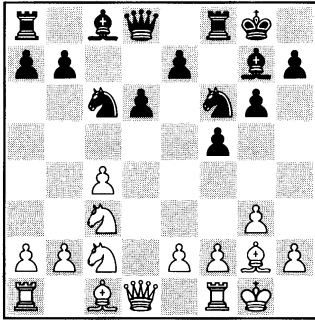
**Variation A3**

**6.e3 ♘f6**

Black did quite well without ...♘f6 in the following game: 6...♙g7 7.♙e2 b6 8.♘xc6 dxc6 9.♖xd8+ ♜xd8 10.♙d2 ♙e6 11.0-0-0 ♖e8 12.e4 ♘h6 13.f3?! ♞f8 14.♞he1 f4 15.g3 ♙e5 C.Foisor-Miezis, Baden 2000. Of course, White played too passively (e.g.



sation for the pawn in Hultin-Bellon, Gothenburg 2004) 9.♘c3 0-0



– 10.♖b1 ♘d7 11.b3 a6 12.♗b2 ♜c8 (12...b5!? 13.♞d2 ♞a5 with counterplay, according to Marin) 13.♘d5 b5 14.♗xf6 ♗xf6 15.♗xf6+ ♜xf6 16.♘e3 ♘a5 17.cxb5 axb5 18.♘d5 ♜f7 19.♘f4 with an unclear position, Engqvist-Bellon, Stockholm 2001.

– 10.♞d2!? ♘d7 11.b3 deserves attention according to M.Marin.

– 10.b3!?! (this exchange sac is best) 10...♗e4!?! 11.♗xe4 ♗xa1 12.♗xa1 fx4 13.♘c2! ♗f5 14.♘e3 ♞d7 15.♗b2 ♜f7 16.♞c2 h5 17.♗xe4 ♗xe4 18.♞xe4 ♗h7 19.f4 with a strong initiative for White in Marin-Pogorelov, Benasque 1997.

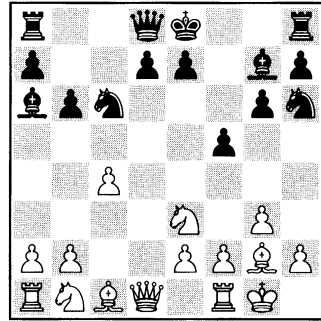
The immediate queen development is also unfavourable for Black: 7...♞b6 8.♘c3 ♗xc3+ 9.bxc3 ♞a5 10.♞d2 d6 11.♘b4 ♘d7 12.♘d5 (M.Marin), or 7...♞a5+!? 8.♘c3!?! (8.♞d2!?) 8...♗xc3+ 9.bxc3 ♞xc3+ (9...♗f6 is probably more appropriate than this pawn-eating) 10.♗d2 ♞xc4 11.♘e3 ♞d4 12.♘d5 ♞b8 13.♗c3 ♞xd1+ 14.♞xd1 e5 15.♘b4d6 16.♞xd6 with an obvious positional advantage for White in Vekshenkov-Galliamova, Novi Sad 1989.

**8.0-0 ♗a6**

8...♗b7 is illogical: 9.♘e3 ♗f6 10.♘c3 0-0 11.♘ed5 d6 12.♗g5 ♞d7 13.♞a4 with a strong pressure. Black decided to give up a

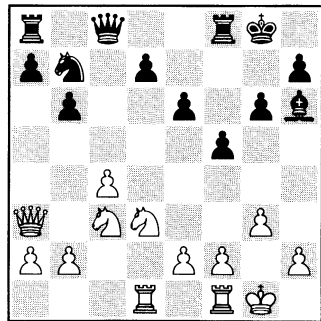
pawn and gradually lost: 13...h6 14.♘xf6+ ♗xf6 15.♗xh6 ♜f7 16.♗d2 Donaldson-Barbre, Kissimmee 1997.

**9.♘e3 ♘h6!**



Black's plan is ...♗f7, e6, g5 etc. White's pieces are placed passively and it is not easy for him to counteract it.

10.♘c3 0-0 11.♞a4 ♗b7 12.♘ed5 e6 13.♘b4 ♘a5! 14.♗xb7 ♘xb7 15.♗xh6 ♗xh6 16.♞ad1 ♘c5 17.♞a3 ♞c8 18.♘d3 ♘b7!



With an excellent position for Black, Krasenkow-Short, Tripoli 2004.

**Variation B2**

**7.♘b3**

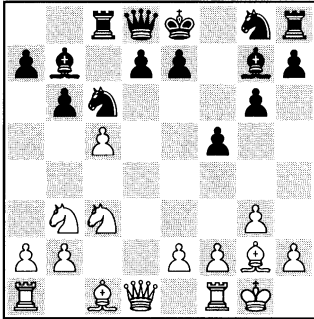
Slightly more active than 7.♘c2. 7...b6!?

Or 7...♟f6 8.♞c3 0-0 9.0-0 b6 10.♙d2 ♙a6  
11.c5 ♟h8 12.♞c1 ♙c4 with a good position,  
Egger-Seibold, Germany Bundesliga B  
1987/88.

**8.0-0 ♙b7 9.♞c3 ♞c8!?**

Pressuring the c4 pawn and preparing  
...♙xc3 bxc3 ♞a5!.

**10.c5!**



**10...♟f6?!**

According to Yudasin 10...♞a5! is better:  
11.♞xa5 ♙xg2 12.♟xg2 bxa5 13.♞a4 ♟f6  
–threatening ...♞e4 – 14.f3 ♞c7 with an un-  
clear position.

**11.♙g5 h6?**

Again 11...♞a5! was preferable.

**12.♙xf6 ♙xf6 13.♞d2! ♞a5 14.♞xa5  
♙xg2 15.♟xg2 bxa5 16.♞d5! ♙g7  
17.♞ac1**

and White obtained a clear advantage (Tim-  
man-Yudasin, Yerevan Olympiad 1996).

### Variation B3

**7.e3!**

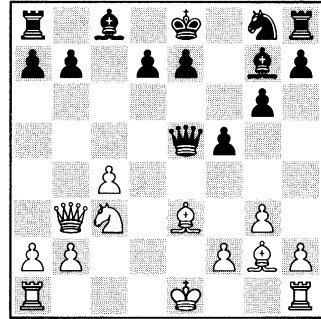
This move deserves the most serious attention.  
Black can't play either ...d6 or ...b6 and

must resort to tactical measures:

**7...♞xd4 8.exd4 ♞b6 9.♞c3!**

White must sacrifice a pawn without hesita-  
tion!

**9...♞xd4 10.♞b3 ♞e5+ 11.♙e3**



**11...♙h6?!**

Logical but bad. 11...♟f6 12.0-0 0-0 is more  
accurate, but White certainly has good com-  
pensation for the pawn.

**12.0-0 ♙xe3 13.fxe3 ♟f6 14.e4 h5!?**  
**15.exf5 gxf5**

15...h4 16.♞d5!

**16.♞ae1 ♞c5+ 17.♟h1 h4 18.♞d5  
♞xd5 19.♙xd5 ♞d6 20.♞c3 ♞h6  
21.g4! fxg4 22.♞d4 ♞h7 23.♞xg4  
♞h8 24.♞g7**

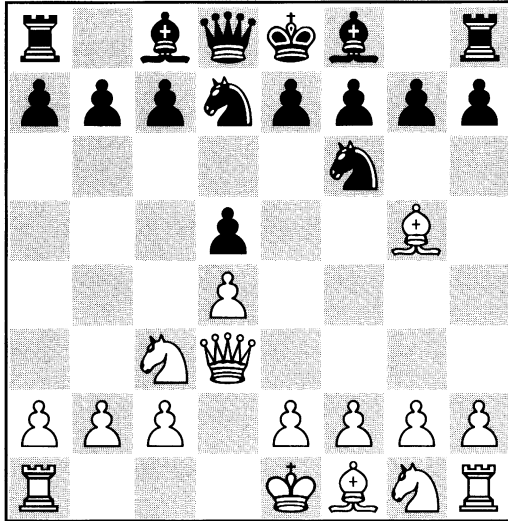
And Black had to resign. Johansen-Miezis,  
Jakarta 2001.

To which extent does this pawn sacrifice  
'refute' the whole 4...f5 system? Hm... let's  
wait for Normunds Miezis' new games or...  
try to look into the position yourself, dear  
Reader!

# CHAPTER 7

## *Dorian Rogozenko*

# Follow the Experts



NIC KEY QP12.1

### 4. ♖d3 in the Richter-Veresov

**1.d4 ♟f6 2.♟c3 d5 3.♙g5 ♞bd7 4.♖d3**

I must admit right from the beginning that this system does not bring an opening advantage for White in the classical sense. That is not to say that it is not unpleasant for your opponent. These days several strong players, such as J. Hector, K. Chernyshov or M. Khachian score almost 100% from the diagrammed position. The point is that by playing 4.♖d3 White aims for fast development with 0-0-0 and e2-e4. Thus White quickly gets an initiative and centralized pieces. Therefore accurate play from Black is required. Sometimes White can support the advance e2-e4 by playing f2-f3. Actually 4.f3 is another interesting option for White inste-

ad of 4.♖d3, as can be seen in the annotations of the last game from this article.

However, let's take things a bit slower. Already 2.♟c3 is in many ways a rather unpleasant surprise for your opponent, who can forget about his main opening repertoire and instead is forced to play 'your' type of positions. If he is not a Pirc player against 1.e4, then 2...d5 is the most likely reply after 2.♟c3. The next move 3.♙g5 has some similarities with the Trompowsky (1.d4 ♟f6 2.♙g5), meaning that here White is also ready take on f6, breaking his opponent's pawn structure and considerably limiting his counterplay. But unlike the case of the Trompowsky, here the knight on c3 renders

the active answer  $\text{d}f6\text{-e}4$  far less attractive for Black. Some Black players are ready to allow  $\text{g}5\text{xf}6$ , but many aren't. This can be seen from the fact that  $3...\text{d}b7$  is the most frequent move in practice. Nevertheless, in order to present a complete repertoire, we also need to examine Black's alternatives to  $3...\text{d}b7$ . These are  $3...\text{f}5$ ,  $3...\text{c}6$ ,  $3...\text{c}5$ ,  $3...\text{g}6$ , and  $3...\text{e}4$ . After  $3...\text{e}6$  White has nothing better than transposing into the French Defence with  $4.\text{e}4$ , so against a French player the choice of this system with White will not contain the element of surprise, but still remains perfectly playable, of course.

I must add that the diagrammed position can also be reached after  $1.\text{d}4 \text{d}5 2.\text{d}c3 \text{d}f6$  (the most popular choice in the practice)  $3.\text{g}5 \text{d}b7 4.\text{c}d3$ .

Finally, about the name of this system. Three players of the past started lots of their games with the move order  $1.\text{d}4 \text{d}f6 2.\text{d}c3 \text{d}5 3.\text{g}5$ : Saviely Tartakower, Kurt Richter and Gavriil Veresov. I think that this opening can be named after any of them. It is also worth mentioning that in later years this system was used periodically by many talented players, such as for instance Mikhail Tal, Tony Miles, Alexander Morozevich and Levon Aronian. We'll examine four games taken from modern practice, and played by the best White specialists of this system. In my annotations to these games I'll try to cover Black's most popular options to meet  $3.\text{g}5$ .

□ Konstantin Chernyshov

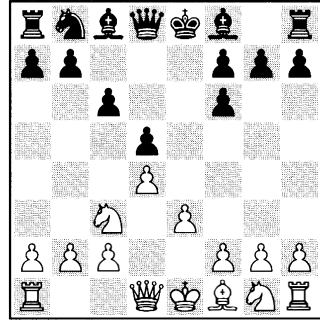
■ Alexander Beliavsky

Ohrid 2001

### 1.d4 $\text{d}f6$ 2. $\text{d}c3$ d5 3. $\text{g}5$ g6

An important sideline that allows White to capture on f6. Let us first investigate the other alternatives to  $3...\text{d}b7$ :  $3...\text{c}6$ ,  $3...\text{f}5$ ,  $3...\text{e}4$ , and  $3...\text{c}5$ .

●  $3...\text{c}6$  4. $\text{g}xf6$   $\text{exf}6$  (4... $\text{g}xf6$  5. $\text{e}4 \text{dxe}4$  6. $\text{d}xe4 \text{f}5$  7... $\text{d}d3$   $\text{e}6$  8. $\text{d}f3 \text{d}d7$  9. $\text{d}g3 \text{g}6$  10.h4  $\text{c}c7$  11.h5  $\text{d}xd3$  12... $\text{c}d3$  0-0-0 13.0-0-0± Alburst-Furman, Daugavpils 1971) 5.e3



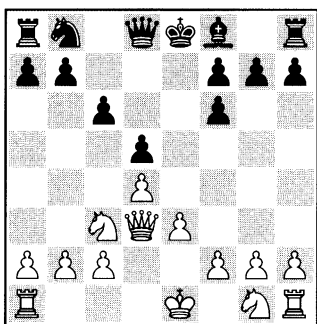
A)  $5...\text{f}5$  6... $\text{d}d3$   $\text{e}6$  7. $\text{d}f3 \text{d}d7$  8.0-0  $\text{d}d6$  9. $\text{d}e2$   $\text{g}6$  10.a4  $\text{a}6$  (10...0-0 11.b3±) 11.b3  $\text{b}5$  12... $\text{c}c1$  (12... $\text{d}f4$ !?) 0-0 13. $\text{d}xe6 \text{fxe}6$  14.c4±) 12...0-0 13.c4  $\text{bxc}4$  14. $\text{bxc}4 \text{c}5$ ! 15. $\text{d}f4$  (15.a5!?) 15... $\text{g}xf4$ . Black now equalizes: 16. $\text{exf}4 \text{dxc}4$  17... $\text{g}xc4 \text{g}xc4$  18... $\text{cxc}4 \text{cxd}4$  19... $\text{f}d1$   $\text{c}a5$  20... $\text{d}xd4 \text{c}c5$  21... $\text{c}a2$  22... $\text{f}c8$  22... $\text{d}f3$  ½-½ Chernyshov-Anka, Gyula 2000.

B)  $5...\text{c}b6$  6... $\text{b}b1$   $\text{d}b4$  (6... $\text{d}a6$  7.a3) 7... $\text{d}d3$ ! 0-0 (7... $\text{c}a5$  8... $\text{d}e2 \text{c}xa2$  9.0-0  $\text{c}a5$  10.e4±) 8... $\text{d}e2 \text{g}g4$  9.0-0  $\text{d}d8$  10.a3  $\text{d}d6$  11.f3  $\text{h}h5$  12.e4± Stewart-McLaughlin, cr BCCA-ch 1995/96.

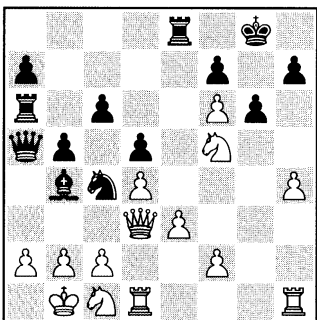
C)  $5...\text{g}6$  6.g3  $\text{f}5$  7.h4  $\text{h}5$  8... $\text{c}d3$   $\text{e}6$  9... $\text{g}g2 \text{d}d7$  10... $\text{d}h3 \text{d}f6$  11... $\text{d}e2 \text{d}b4$ + 12.c3  $\text{d}d6$  13... $\text{c}c2 \text{d}e4$  14... $\text{d}hf4 \text{c}d7$  15... $\text{d}d3$ . A typical manoeuvre whereby White is slowly improving the position of his knights. 15...0-0-0 16.0-0-0  $\text{c}b8$  17... $\text{c}b1 \text{c}e7$  18... $\text{c}a1 \text{c}c8$  19... $\text{d}ef4 \text{d}he8$  20... $\text{d}f3 \text{c}c7$  21... $\text{d}he1 \text{d}e7$  22... $\text{d}e2 \text{d}de8$  23... $\text{c}a4 \text{d}d7$  24... $\text{d}c1 \text{e}6$  25... $\text{d}xe6 \text{d}xe6$  26.c4  $\text{dxc}4$  27... $\text{cxc}4 \text{c}a5$  28.b4  $\text{c}b6$  29... $\text{d}b2 \text{d}e6$  30... $\text{d}c5$ ± Voloshin-Pushkarev, Minsk 1993.

D)  $5...\text{f}5$  6... $\text{d}d3 \text{d}xd3$  (6... $\text{c}d7$  7... $\text{g}xf5 \text{c}xf5$  8... $\text{d}ge2 \text{d}d6$  9... $\text{d}g3 \text{c}e6$  10... $\text{c}f3$ ±  $\text{g}6$

11.0-0 f5 12.♘ce2 ♘d7 13.♘f4 ♖e7 14.b3 h5 15.c4 h4 16.♘ge2 and again White achieved the typical initiative, which he converted into a full point in Chernyshov-Kosteniuk, Moscow 2001; 6...♙g6 7.♘ge2 ♘b4 8.0-0 ♖e7 9.♘f4! (White shouldn't fear 9...♙xc3 10.bxc3, after which he can follow up with c3-c4 and also use the b-file) 9...♘d7 10.♘ce2 ♘d6 11.♘g3! ♙xd3 12.♖xd3 g6 13.♘fe2 f5 14.b3! ♘f6 15.c4 0-0 16.c5 ♙c7 17.b4 a6 18.a4 ♜fe8 19.b5± Khachian-Mnatsakanian, Yerevan 1994) 7.♖xd3



D1) 7...♙b4 8.♘e2 0-0 9.0-0-0 ♘d7 10.g4 (according to Gufeld, White has better chances to build a kingside attack) 10...♜e8 11.h4 b5 12.♖b1 ♘b6 13.♘g3 ♜b8 14.♘ce2 ♘c4 15.♘f5 ♜b6 16.g5 ♜a6 17.♘c1 ♖a5 18.gxf6 g6

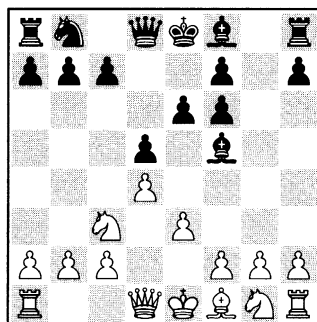


19.h5! gxf5 20.♖xf5 ♜e6 21.♖f4 ♖f8 22.♜h1+- Gufeld-Ujtumen, Tbilisi 1971.

D2) 7...♘d7 8.♘ge2 ♙d6 9.e4!? dxe4 10.♘xe4 ♙b4+ 11.c3 ♙e7 12.0-0-0 13.c4 ♘c5 14.♘xc5 ♙xc5 15.♜ad1 ♜e8 16.♘g3 ♙d6 17.♜fe1±. The pawn majority on the queenside secures White an advantage. Black couldn't hold a draw in Bagheri-Zozulia, Elancourt 2004.

● 3...♙f5 This can be considered one of the main answers to 3.♙g5.

A) 4.♙xf6 gxf6 (4...exf6 5.e3 c6 6.♙d3 transposes to 3...c6) 5.e3 e6



A1) 6.♙d3 ♙g6 7.f4 c5 (after 7...f5 White must play 8.♘ce2 c5 9.c3 ♙h5 10.♖d2) 8.f5! exf5 9.♖f3 ♘c6 10.♘ge2 ♖d7 11.0-0 White has an obvious advantage, Chernyshov-Ovetchkin, Smolensk 2000.

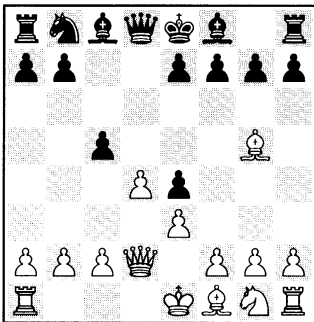
A2) 6.♘ge2 ♙d6 (6...c5 7.♘g3 ♙g6 8.h4 h6 9.h5 ♙h7 10.♙d3±) 7.♘b5 ♙e7 8.♘g3 ♙g6 9.c4 c6 10.♘c3 h5 and now in the game Miles-Hort, Amsterdam 1982, White played the somewhat weird 11.♘ge2. According to Hort White would have had an advantage after the simple 11.♙d3.

B) Another plan worth considering is 4.f3. White intends ♖d2 and 0-0-0:

B1) 4...♙g6 5.♖d2 e6 (5...♘bd7 6.0-0-0 e6 7.♘h3 ♙e7 8.♘f4 ♘g8 9.♙xe7 ♘xe7 10.e4± Khachian-Strikovic, Cannes 1996) 6.0-0-0 ♙b4 7.♘h3 ♘bd7 8.a3 ♙e7 9.♘f4 c5 10.dxc5 ♘xc5 11.e4 with initiative, Khachian-Goletiani, Yerevan 1996.

B2) 4...♘b7 5.♚d2 h6 6.♙h4 e6 7.e3 c6 8.♗ge2 ♙e7 9.♙f2 b5 10.g4 ♙h7 11.♗g3 ♘b6 12.h4 with a complicated, doubled-edged position, Hector-Fridh, Malmö 1986.

● 3...♗e4 4.♗xe4 (White can also consider to play 'à la Hodgson' with 4.h4 In the following game this strategy paid off: 4...♗xg5 5.hxg5 ♙f5 6.♗f3 ♘c6 7.♚d2 ♚d7 8.e3 0-0-0 9.a3 f6 10.0-0-0 ♘b8 11.♙e2 ♘a5 12.♖h4 ♚c6 13.♖d1 e6 14.♙b5 ♚b6 15.♚h4 a6 16.♙d3 ♖c8 17.e4 dxe4 18.♗xe4± Mamedjarova-Erdogan, Batumi 2002) 4...dxe4 5.e3 (5.♚d2 c5 6.dxc5 ♚xd2+ 7.♙xd2 e5 8.b4 ♘c6 9.e3 ♙e6 10.a3 g6 11.♗e2 ♙g7 12.♗c3 f5 13.♘b5 0-0-0 14.♗d6+ ♘b8 15.0-0-0± Schneider-Langeweg, Porz 1991) 5...c5 6.♚d2



A) In Maryasin-Manor, Israel tt 2002, Black lost quickly after 6...♘c6 7.d5 ♗e5 8.0-0-0 g6 9.f4! exf3ep 10.♗xf3 ♗xf3 (10...♙g7 11.♚c3!) 11.gxf3 ♙g7 12.d6! f6 13.♙b5+ ♘f7 14.♙f4 ♙e6 15.♚c3 f5 16.♙e5 ♙xe5 17.♚xe5 ♚b6 18.♙d7! 1-0.

B) 6...♚d5 7.♙f4 cxd4 8.c4! ♚d7 9.exd4 e6 10.a3 ♙d6 11.♖d1 0-0 12.♗e2 ♚c7 13.♙xd6 ♚xd6 14.♗c3 f5 15.♙e2± Fomina-Limberg, Tallinn 2000.

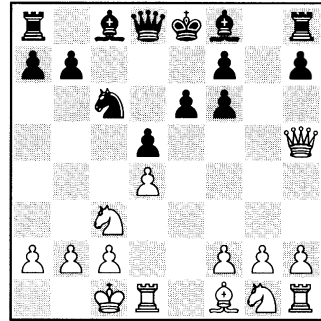
● 3...c5 4.♙xf6 gxf6 (4...exf6 5.e3 ♙e6 6.♗ge2 ♘c6 7.g3±) 5.e3 cxd4 (or 5...♘c6 6.♚h5) 6.exd4:

A) 6...h5 7.♚f3! e6 (7...♙e6 8.♙b5+ ♘c6 9.♗ge2±) 8.0-0-0±.

B) 6...♘c6 7.♚h5!

B1) 7...♗xd4 8.0-0-0 e5 9.♗f3 ♗xf3 (or 9...♙c5 10.♗xe5) 10.♙b5+ ♙d7 11.♖xd5+.

B2) 7...e6 8.0-0-0



This is a complicated position, in which White has certain positional advantages – better development, a better pawn structure, and an active queen:

B21) 8...♙g7 9.g4!? ♙d7 10.f4 (10.♙g2 ♚b6 11.♗ge2 0-0-0 12.♚xf7 ♖dg8 13.♚h5 ♘b8 14.f4 f5 15.gxf5 ♗xd4 16.♗xd4 ♙xd4 17.fxe6 ♙xe6 18.♙f3 ♖c8 19.♖he1 ♖xc3 20.♖xd4 ♚xd4 21.bxc3 ♚xf4+ with equality in Maksimovic-Rodriguez, Beograd 1980) 10...♚c7 11.♗ge2 ♗e7 12.♖g1 b5 13.f5 with a clear initiative. This position occurred twice in two little-known correspondence games, both won by White.

B22) 8...♙b4 9.♗ge2 ♙d7 10.h4! ♚e7 11.♖h3 0-0-0 12.♖e3 White is slightly better, Mohr-Farago, Bled 2001.

B23) 8...♚a5 9.♘b1 ♖b8 10.♗ge2 b5 11.♗c1 b4 12.♗3e2 ♚b6 13.f4 ♙d6 14.f5! exf5 (14...e5 15.♚h6±) 15.g3 ♙e6 16.♙h3 ♖g8 17.♖he1 ♙g5 18.♚xh7 ♗e7 19.♗f4 ♘d7 20.♗xe6 fxe6 21.♚f7+– Khachian-Hamid, Fajr 1992.

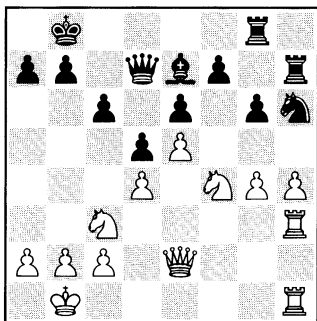
#### 4.♙xf6

As you might have noticed from the variations above, I believe that given the opportu-



nity White should stick to the initial idea and break the opponent's pawn structure by taking on f6. Nevertheless, White has almost always an alternative plan to play for a quick 0-0-0.

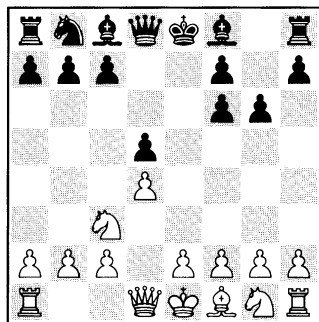
In the following game White took advantage of his lead in development even in a closed type of position. 4.♖d2 ♘b7 (after 4...♙g7 White's idea is to trade the dark-squared bishops with 5.♙h6) 5.0-0-0 c6 6.f3 h6 7.♙xf6 ♘xf6 8.e4 h5 (8...♙g7 9.e5±) 9.e5 ♘g8 10.♙d3 ♘h6 11.♖b1 ♙f5 12.♘g2 ♙xd3 13.♖xd3 e6 14.♘f4 ♖d7 15.♖e2 0-0-0 16.g4 (suddenly Black is facing big problems with his kingside pieces. The next part is very instructive) 16...hxg4 17.fxg4 ♙e7 18.♙d3 ♙h7?! 19.h4 ♙g8 20.♙dh3 ♖b8



21.♘a4! (that is what space advantage is all about – the possibilities to switch pieces between flanks quicker than your opponent) 21...b6 22.♙b3 ♖c7 23.♙hh3 ♙c8 24.h5 g5 25.♘d3± ♖a8 26.♘dc5! (fantastic play by White, who totally outplays his talented opponent) 26...♙xc5 27.dxc5 b5 28.♘c3 (in spite of being a piece down, White has a large advantage. He is ready to open up the queenside and build a decisive attack. Black's pieces on the kingside are simply too far to help) 28...♙b8 (28...♙hh8 29.a4 a6 30.axb5 axb5 31.♘xb5 cxb5 32.♖xb5+-; 28...d4 29.♘xb5 cxb5 30.♖e4+ ♖c6

31.♖xh7+-) 29.a4 a6 30.axb5 axb5 31.♘xb5!+- cxb5 32.♙xb5 ♙b7 33.♙xb7 ♖xb7 34.♙b3+ ♖c8 35.♖a6+ ♖d8 36.♖a8+ ♖d7 37.♙b7 ♘xg4 38.♖a4+ Schneider-Leko, Nettetal 1991.

**4...exf6**



**5.♖d3!?**

This amazing move is possible even here. White keeps many options open, such as e3 or e4, the king might castle long, and also White can first start pushing the kingside pawns in order to blockade the kingside and get squares for the knights.

The usual plan would be 5.e3 ♙g7 6.♙d3 I believe that this is objectively the right plan to develop the pieces, but Chernyshov is very successful with his unusual play in the opening. 6...0-0 (stronger is 6...f5) 7.♖f3 c6 8.g4! ♙e8 9.0-0-0 a5 10.♘g2 a4 11.a3 b5 12.♘a2 Miles-Spassov, Surakarta 1982. According to Miles, White already has a big positional advantage.

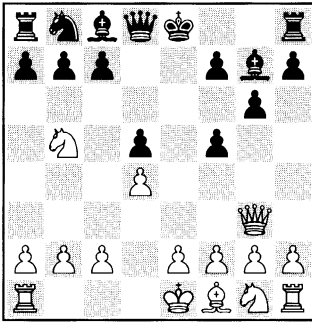
**5...f5**

Chernyshov has played exactly this position before, so the entire system wasn't an opening surprise for Beliavsky. 5...c6 6.h4 f5 7.h5 ♘d7 8.f4 ♙d6 9.e3 ♖e7 10.♙e2 ♘f6 11.hxg6 fxg6 12.♘f3 ♙d7 13.♘e5 0-0-0 14.0-0-0 ♘e4 15.♘xe4 dxe4 16.♖c3 ♖b8 17.♙c4 (White is slightly better. Next Black traded both light pieces, but still White kept

a marginal edge) 17...♙xe5 18.dxe5 ♙e6 19.♙xe6 ♖xe6 20.b3 h5 21.♖d4 ♗xd4 22.♗xd4 ♗e7 23.♖d1 and in the game Chernyshov-Sinkovics, Gyula 2000, White converted his slight advantage.

**6. ♖g3!? ♙g7**

Instead of the fianchetto, 6...♙d6 unexpectedly runs into 7.♖e3+ ♙e7 (7...♙e6 8.♗xd5) 8.♖e5 attacking both h8 and d5. 7.♗b5



With original play in the opening Chernyshov manages to confuse his experienced opponent.

**7... ♗a6 8. ♖a3 c5**

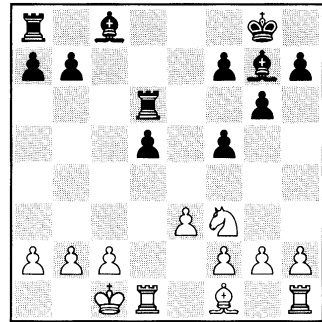
As rightly pointed out by A.Finkel, Black should have opted for an endgame with 8...♖e7. I doubt, though, that this ensures 'easy equality', as Finkel considers. The endgame is complicated and both sides have their chances. In a rather closed position White's knights are certainly good pieces. Black's main problem is the lack of space for his bishops. A possible continuation would be: 9.♖xe7+ ♗xe7 10.♗c3 (10.e3 f4!?) 10...c6 (after 10...♙xd4 11.♗xd5+ the king feels uncomfortable in the centre, for instance: 11...♗f8 12.c3 ♙g7 13.e3 c6 14.♙xa6 cxd5 15.♙d3±) 11.e3 f4 12.♙xa6 bxa6 13.♗a4!? (using the weaknesses in the opponent's pawn formation) 13...♖e8 14.♗e2 ♗d6 15.♗d2 fxe3+ 16.fxe3 ♖b8

(16...♙h6 17.♗f4) 17.♗f4 ♖b7 18.♖ae1 ♖be7 19.♗c5. Black has problems with his structure. White will push the a-pawn, blockading the doubled pawns and later will attack them with the knights.

**9.dxc5 0-0 10.e3 ♖e7**

10...f4 11.0-0 fxe3 12.fxe3±.

**11.♗d6 ♗xc5 12.♖xc5 ♖d8 13.0-0 ♖xd6 14.♖xd6 ♗xd6 15.♗f3**



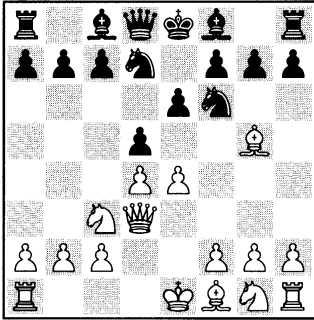
White got what he was aiming for – a better endgame with limited active possibilities for Black. Not willing to defend in passivity, in the next part Beliavsky is trying to get some counterplay, but he fails. 15...b5 15...♙e6 16.♗d4±. 16.♗d4 b4 17.♙e2 ♙e6 18.♖d3 a5 19.♖hd1 a4 20.♙f3 ♖a5 21.a3! It turns out that the advance of the queenside pawns has merely aggravated Black's problems. Now his position is difficult. 21...bxa3 22.♖xa3 ♖b6 23.c3 ♙f8 24.b4! ♖a8 25.♗d2 This is technically winning for White: two weaknesses on a4 and d5, plus better pieces will soon result in a material advantage. 25...f4 26.♖da1 fxe3+ 27.fxe3 ♙d7 28.♙xd5 ♖e8 29.♖f1 ♖e7 30.♗d3 ♙g7 31.e4 ♙e8 32.♖a2 ♖c7 33.♖b1 ♙f8 34.b5 a3 35.c4 ♙c5 36.♗c2 ♖a7 37.♖ba1 ♗g7 38.♖xa3 ♙xa3 39.♖xa3 ♖c7 40.♗d4 ♖b8 41.♖a6 ♗f8 42.b6 ♖c5 43.♗c3 Black resigned.

□ Jonny Hector

■ Humpy Koneru

Wijk aan Zee II 2003

1.d4 d5 2.♘c3 ♘f6 3.♙g5 ♘bd7  
4.♚d3 e6 5.e4



This position is usually attributed to the French Defence, but this is only partially correct. In the French Defence one can hardly see White playing a move like ♚d1-d3 at all. Moreover, the diagrammed position never arises via a French Defence move order. Even after the next few moves, when we'll have a standard 'French pawn structure', one will have difficulties to find those positions arising via the starting moves 1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5. All because of the same reason – the move ♚d3, which does not exist in the theory of French Defence. Moreover, in the French Defence with 3...dxe4 Black very rarely combines both ...♘bd7 with ...♙e7, so in our case I would not name it French Defence at all, or at least we can talk about a very specific type of French Defence.

5...dxe4 6.♗xe4 ♙e7 7.♗xf6+ ♙xf6 Hector later faced the other recapture too. After 7...♗xf6 8.♗f3 0-0-0 9.0-0-0 b6 10.♗e5! ♙b7 11.♚h3 ♗e4 (possibly better is 11...h6 12.♙e3 ♗d5 although making a pawn move in front of the king without being forced to do also has its drawbacks; 11...♗d5!?)

12.♙e3 f5 13.f3 ♗d6 14.♙d3. The strong knight on e5 and the possibility to attack with g2-g4 secure White a stable advantage. 14...♚e8 15.♚he1 b5 16.g4 ♙d5 17.♖b1 a5 18.gxf5 exf5 19.♖g1 ♗f6 20.♙g5 ♚e6 21.♙xf5 ♗xf5 22.♚xf5 c6 23.f4± Hector-Sprenger, Hamburg 2003.

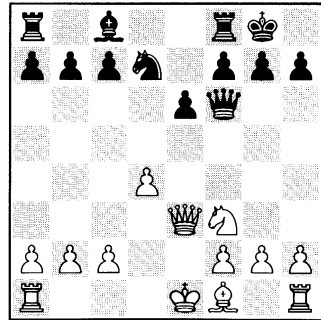
8.♗xf6 ♚xf6

This is stronger than 8...♗xf6 9.♗f3 0-0 10.0-0-0±. In these pawn formations in order to equalize completely Black must break in the centre, either with the help of ...c5, or ...e5. Otherwise White's space advantage will always secure at least a slight advantage. That's why Black keeps the knight on d7: to support the central pawn advances.

9.♗f3 0-0

9...c5 10.0-0-0 cxd4 11.♚xd4 ♚xd4 12.♗xd4 a6 13.g3 b6 14.♙g2 ♚a7 15.♗c6 ♚c7 16.♚d6± Tolnai-Balogh, Budapest 2000.

10.♚e3!



With this move White stops 10...e5. Instead 10.0-0-0 allows 10...e5, with equality.

10...c5 11.0-0-0

Inaccurate is 11.♙d3 cxd4 12.♚xd4 ♚xd4 13.♗xd4 ♗c5 14.♙c4 ♙d7 15.0-0-0 ♚fd8 16.♚he1 a6 17.♗b3 ♗xb3+ 18.♙xb3 ♙c6= Rösch-Orsag, Germany Bundesliga B 1996/97.

11...b6

After this natural move Black finds herself in big trouble. Still, life is also difficult after:

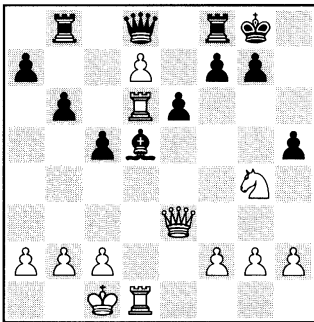
11...cxd4 12.♞xd4, and now

A) 12...e5 13.♞e4 ♖e6 14.♙c4 ♗c6 15.♙b3 ♞e8 (15...♟f6 16.♞c4±) 16.♞f4! (16.♟xe5±) 16...♞f8 (16...♟f6 17.♟xe5+-) 17.♞xf7 ♞xf7 18.♞d1+- with multiple threats. White will win back more material than he sacrificed.

B) 12...♟c5 was the only way to develop. However, White keeps better chances thanks to development advantage and a perspective of kingside attack. 13.♟e5 b6 14.♙e2 (or 14.♙b5) and Black still does not have 14...♙b7 because of 15.b4 followed by 16.♟d7.

### 12.♙b5! cxd4

A few months later Hector played this position again: 12...♗e7 13.d5! ♟f6 14.♙c6 ♞b8 15.d6 ♗d8 16.d7 ♙b7 17.♟e5 ♟g4 18.♟xg4 ♙xc6 19.♞d6 ♙d5 20.♞d1± h5



21.c4! ♙xc4 22.♟e5 ♙d5 23.♞1xd5 exd5 24.♟c6+- Hector-Lindberg, Malmö 2003.

### 13.♞xd4 ♗e7

Or 13...♟c5 14.♟e5±.

### 14.♙c6 ♞b8 15.♞hd1 ♟f6

The only way to keep material equality for a while was 15...♟c5 16.b4 ♟a6 (16...♙b7 17.♟e5 ♞fc8 (17...♞bc8 18.♙xb7 ♟xb7 19.♞d7+-) 18.♞d6!+-) 17.a3 but it would have hardly changed the result – White has strong pressure.

### 16.♗e5!+- ♙a6

16...♙b7 loses as well: 17.♞d7 ♟xd7

18.♞xd7 ♗b4 19.♙xb7 ♗a4 20.♗d4 ♗xa2 21.♟e5+-.

### 17.♞a4 ♞bc8

17...♙b7 18.♞xa7+-.

### 18.♟d4 ♟g4 19.♗f4 h5 20.♞xa6

The rest is easy. 20...e5 21.♟f5 ♗f6 22.♗f3 ♞xc6 23.♗xc6 ♗xf5 24.♗f3 ♗g5+ 25.♟b1 ♟xh2 26.♗g3 ♟g4 27.f3 ♞d8 28.♞xd8+ ♗xd8 29.♗e1 ♟f6 30.♞xa7 e4 31.fxe4 ♟xe4 32.a4 f5 33.♗e2 ♗g5 34.♞b7 ♗g6 35.♗b5 ♗g4 36.♞xb6 h4 37.a5 ♟d2+ 38.♟a2 ♟c4 39.♞c6 ♟e3 40.a6 ♗d4 41.c3

Black resigned.

□ Melikset Khachian

■ Igor Koniushev

Moscow 1996

### 1.d4 d5 2.♟c3 ♟f6 3.♙g5 ♟bd7

### 4.♗d3 c6

4...h6 5.♙h4 c6 6.0-0-0 (6.e4? ♟xe4 7.♟xe4 dxe4 8.♗xe4 ♗a5+ 9.c3 g5 10.♙g3 f5 followed by 11...f4 wins a piece for Black) 6...b5 7.♟f3 ♗a5 8.♟d2 e6 9.e3 ♙e7 10.f3 ♗b6 11.♙f2 a5 12.e4. The position is difficult to evaluate. Black has space on the queenside, White in the centre and soon on the kingside. In the game Gelashvili-Halkias, Yerevan 2000, White won after a long and complicated strategic battle.

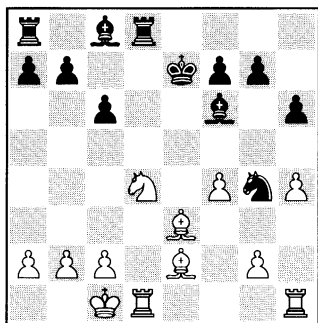
### 5.e4

The main idea behind 4.♗d3. Nevertheless, another specialist of the system prefers to castle queenside and push the kingside pawns instead: 5.♟f3 g6 6.0-0-0 ♙g7 7.h3 0-0 8.g4. I doubt the objective strength of this approach and therefore I recommend the central strategy (5.e4). 8...b5 9.♟e5 ♟xe5 10.dxe5 ♟d7 11.f4 b4 12.♟a4 f6 13.exf6 exf6 14.♙h4 ♗a5 15.♗b3 ♞e8 16.♙g2 ♟h8 17.e4 dxe4 18.♞d6 and White later converted his positional plusses in Chernyshov-Boguszlavskij, Harkany 2001. How-

ever, the result had little to do with the outcome of the opening.

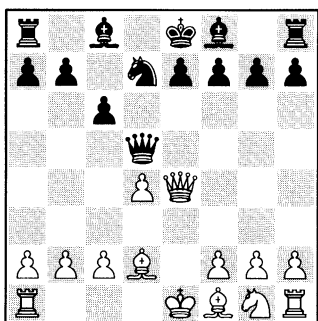
**5...♖xe4**

5...dxe4 6.♖xe4 e6 7.♗f3 ♕e7 (compared to the previous game, we have the moves ♗f3 and c6 included, which clearly favours White) 8.♗xf6+ (8.♗xf6±) 8...♗xf6 9.h4 h6 10.♗e3 ♖e7 11.0-0-0 e5 12.♖e4 exd4 13.♖xe7+ ♗xe7 14.♗xd4 ♗e5 15.♗e2 ♖d8 16.f4 ♗g4



17.♗xc6+ bxc6 18.♗c5+ ♗e8 19.♖de1+- Khachian-Müller, Los Angeles 2003.

**6.♗xe4 dxe4 7.♖xe4 ♖a5+ 8.♗d2 ♖d5**

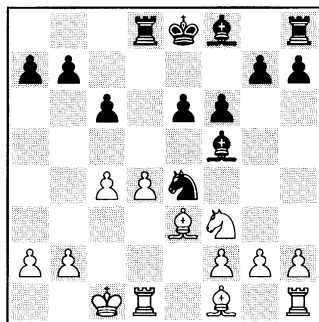


**9.♖e3**

9.♖h4 ♗f6 10.c4 ♖e4+ 11.♖xe4 ♗xe4 12.♗e3 g6 13.♗d3 ♗f6 14.♗f3 ♗g7 15.h3 0-0 16.0-0-0. White has much easier play in the endgame: 16...a6 17.♖he1 b5 18.♗e5 ♗b7 19.g4 ♖f8 20.g5 ♗d7 21.f4 ♖ac8

22.♗e2 ♖c7 23.♗d2! ♗xe5 24.♗a5! ♗xc4 25.♗xc7+- Khachian-Liu, Los Angeles 2003.

**9...♗f6 10.♗f3 ♗f5 11.c4 ♖e4 12.♗e5 ♖d8 13.♖xe4 ♗xe4 14.♗e3 f6 15.♗f3 e6 16.0-0-0**



The position is close to equal, but Black still has to fight for it. **16...♗f7 17.♗h4! ♗d6 18.c5 g5 19.♗xf5 ♗xf5 20.♗c4 ♗xe3 21.fxe3 f5 22.♖c2 h5 23.b4 a6 24.e4! fxe4 25.♖hf1+ ♗e7 26.♖fe1 ♖h6 27.♖xe4 ♗g7 28.d5! cxd5 29.♖xd5 e5 30.a4 ♖f8 31.♖d2 b6? 31...♖f4 32.♗d5±. 32.♗xa6 bxc5 33.b5+- ♖d6 34.a5 ♖xd2+ 35.♗xd2 ♖f2+ 36.♖e2 ♖xe2+ 37.♗xe2 ♗d6 38.♗b7 e4 39.b6 c4 40.a6**  
Black resigned.

☐ Konstantin Chernyshov  
 ■ Peter Szekely  
 Pardubice 2002

**1.d4 ♗f6 2.♗c3 d5 3.♗g5 ♗bd7 4.♖d3**

Another interesting way to prepare e4 is the immediate 4.f3. To give a few examples:

A) 4...h6 5.♗h4 e6 6.e4 ♗e7 7.e5 ♗h5 8.♗xe7 ♖xe7 9.♗h3! c5 10.g4! ♖h4+ 11.♗e2 cxd4 12.♖xd4 f6 13.♖f2! ♖xf2+ 14.♗xf2fxe5 15.gxh5+- Khachian-Kostin, Pardubice 1996.

B) 4...c6 5.e4 dxe4 6.fxe4 ♖b6 (6...♗a5 7.e5 ♟e4 8.♙d2 ♟xd2 9.♗xd2 e6 10.♟f3 ♙b4 11.a3 c5 12.♖b1 ♙xc3 13.bxc3 ♗xa3 14.♙d3 with very good compensation for the pawn, Miladinovic-Charbonneau, Montreal 2000) 7.♟f3 e5 (7...♗xb2 8.♙d2☞) 8.dxe5 ♟g4? (8...♗xb2☞) 9.♗d2 ♟dxe5 10.h3!± ♟xf3+ 11.gxf3 ♟e5 12.0-0-0± Morozevich-Lazarev, Alushta 1993.

C) 4...c5 5.dxc5 e6 (5...♗a5 6.♙xf6 ♟xf6 7.♗d4 e5 8.♗xe5+ ♙e6 9.e3! 0-0-0 10.♟e2 ♙xc5 11.♟d4 ♙d6 12.♗g5 h6 13.♗h4 g5 14.♗f2 ♙a3 15.♟b3 ♗b4 16.bxa3 ♗xc3+ 17.♗d2 ♗xd2+ 18.♟xd2± Khachian-Minasian, Yerevan 1994) 6.e4 (6.b4!? ♙e7 7.♖b1 a5 8.a3 b6 9.c6 ♟e5 10.b5 ♙xa3 11.e4 was unclear in Khachian-Donchenko, Moscow 1995) 6...d4?! 7.♗xd4 ♙xc5 8.♗d2 a6 9.0-0-0 ♗c7 10.♗f4 e5 11.♗g3 0-0 12.♟b1± Aronian-Bokros, Szeged 1994.

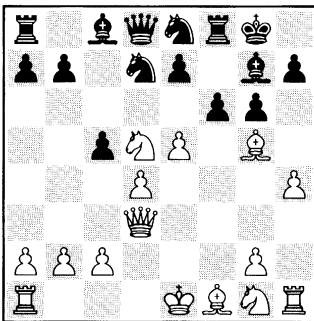
**4...g6 5.f3**

Preparing e4. The immediate 5.e4 also comes into consideration: 5.e4 dxe4 6.♟xe4 ♙g7 7.♟f3 0-0 8.0-0-0 c6 9.♟b1 b5 10.h3 a5 11.g4± Khachian-Casella, Costa Mesa 2002.

**5...♙g7 6.e4 c6**

The alternative is 6...dxe4 7.fxe4. Two games by Hector are relevant here:

A) 7...0-0 8.e5 ♟e8 9.h4 c5 10.♟d5 f6



11.♗b3 e6 (11...fxg5 12.♟xe7+ ♟h8 13.♟xg6+ hxg6 14.hxg5+-; 11...♟h8

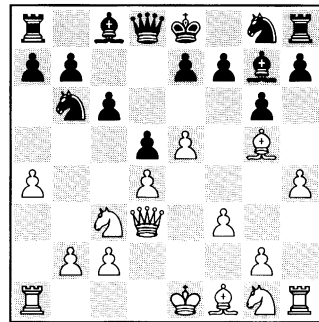
12.exf6 exf6 13.♙e3±) 12.♟xf6+ ♟dxf6 13.0-0-0 ♗b6 14.exf6 ♟xf6 15.dxc5 ♗xc5 16.♙c4± Hector-Moberg, Sweden tt 2001/02.

B) 7...c6 8.♟f3 h6 9.♙e3 ♟g4 10.♙g1 e5 11.d5 0-0-0 12.0-0-0 ♗a5 13.♟d2! ♗c7 14.h3 ♟g6 15.g4 cxd5 16.exd5 ♟b6 17.♙g2 ♙d7 18.♙h2! ♗fe8 19.♗de1 ♗ad8 20.d6 ♗c8 21.♗xe5 ♙c6 22.♙xc6 ♗xc6 23.♗d1± Hector-Ingbrandt, Sweden tt 2003/04.

**7.e5 ♟g8 8.h4 ♟b6**

Not 8...h5 9.e6!.

**9.a4**



The position is highly unusual for any opening.

**9...♟c4**

Or 9...h5 10.a5!? (10.♟d1±) 10...♟c4 (10...♙f5 11.♗d1 ♟d7 12.g4 ♙e6 13.♟ge2 hxg4 14.♟f4) 11.♟d1 ♟xa5 12.♟e3 and White has good compensation.

**10.b3 ♙f5 11.♗d1 ♟b6 12.♗d2**

Amazing play by White – the third move with the queen and a lot of other moves with pawns. And the result? White has a space advantage and possibilities to play on both wings!

**12...f6**

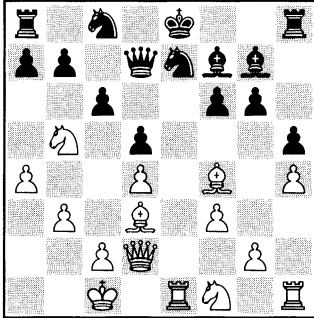
Otherwise Black cannot develop at all.

**13.exf6 exf6 14.♙f4 ♟e7 15.♟ge2 h6**

I think this is a serious inaccuracy. Now Black won't be able to castle, because pawn h6 will be hanging.

15...0-0 16.0-0-0±.

16. ♖g3 ♙e6 17. ♗d3 ♙f7 18. 0-0-0  
 ♜bc8 19. ♞de1 h5  
 19...g5 20. ♜f5±.  
 20. ♜f1 ♚d7?  
 Trying to prevent the advance g2-g4  
 (20...0-0 21.g4±), but...  
 21. ♜b5!

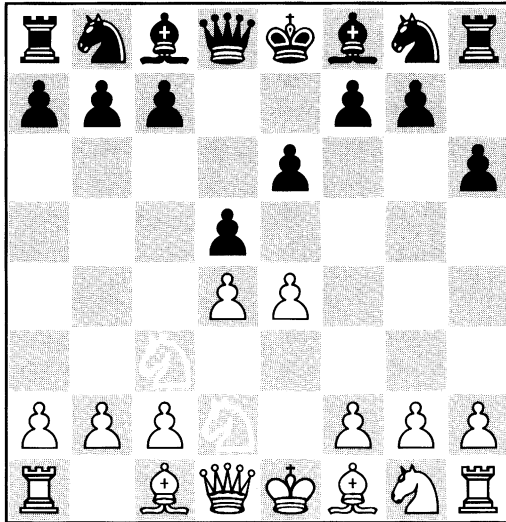


Truly amazing play. Black must have been very surprised indeed to realize that he is already lost. 21...0-0 22. ♜c7 ♞b8 23. ♜a6 bxa6 23...♞a8 24. ♜c5 ♚d8 25. ♜xb7+-.  
 24. ♙xb8 ♜d6 25. ♙xd6 ♚xd6  
 26. ♚c3+- f5 27.g3 ♚f6 28.f4  
 28. ♚c5!+-.  
 28...c5! 29. ♜d2 ♜c6  
 30. ♚xc5 ♜xd4 31. ♞e5 ♜c6 32. ♜f3±  
 ♞d8 33. ♞he1 ♙f8 34. ♚c3 d4 35. ♞e6  
 ♚xe6 36. ♞xe6 dxc3 37. ♞xc6 a5  
 38. ♞xc3 ♙e8 39. ♜e5 ♙d6 40. ♙b5  
 ♙xe5 41.fxe5 ♙xb5 42.axb5 ♞d5  
 The rook ending is winning of course. 43. ♞c6  
 ♞xe5 44. ♞xg6+ ♜f7 45. ♞g5 ♞xb5  
 46. ♞xh5 a6 47.c3 ♜g6 48. ♞g5+ ♜f6  
 49. ♜c2 ♞b8 50.g4 fxg4 51. ♞xg4 ♞h8  
 52. ♜b2 ♜e7 53. ♞d4 ♜e6 54. ♜a3  
 Black resigned

# CHAPTER 8

*Jeroen Bosch*

## Let's wait and see: 3...h6 in the French



NICKEYFR 4.1  
and FR 14.1

### 3...h6 – sur place!

This SOS chapter brings you a complete repertoire against 3.♘c3 and 3.♘d2 in the French based on the move 3...h6!?. As I will demonstrate below, this little pawn move is part of a subtle – indeed prophylactic – opening system in which, depending upon your opponent's set-up, you have the opportunity to opt for a favourable, typically 'French', position. If, at first sight, you feel that 3...h6 surely is too ridiculous for words and are afraid to end up as the laughing stock of the tournament hall or your local chess club... Well, don't be! This line was invented by French IM Bricard, and is regularly played by grandmasters Legky and Eingorn. Morozevich is another recent convert.

**1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.♘c3 h6**

**1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.♘d2 h6**

We will examine the concrete ideas behind 3...h6 with the help of two complete games: Gashimov-Eingorn, Bled 2002 (3.♘c3), and Shaw-Eingorn, Bad Wiessee 2003 (3.♘d2). It is useful, however, to start off with a short philosophical introduction.

In general, the semi-closed nature of the French Defence lends itself almost ideally to 'slow' (prophylactic) play. If 3...h6 looks odd, then what about 3...a6? Surely that looks equally insipid. However, just think of 3.♘d2 a6, which is a respectable line, as after 4.♘gf3 c5 there is no check on b5. Against both 3.♘c3 and 3.♘d2 other 'slow



moves' are playable too, for example, 3...♗c6 and 3...♙e7. Versus 3...♗c3 both Petrosian and Bronstein have been successful with 3...♙b4 4.e5 ♖d7!?, when 5.a3 ♙f8! is a main line. I will give you one final example of backward chess in the French, because it links up so well with one of the main ideas behind Gashimov-Eingorn, as explained below: 1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3...♗c3 ♙e7!? 4...♙d3 ♗c6 5.♗f3 ♗b4! 6.e5 ♗xd3+ 7.cxd3 h6(!) 8.h4 ♙f8(!) 9...♙d2 ♗e7 10.♖c1 ♙d7 11.h5 a5 12.a4 ♖c8 13.♗h3 ♗c6 14.♗a2 ♖a8 15.♗f1 ♖b8 16.♗g1 ♖a7 17.♙e3 ♖b6 18.♗c3 ♗e7, and Black had a good position in Hracek-Seirawan, Ceska Trebova 1998. By the way, 6...♙e2 would have been met by 6...♗f6 7.e5 ♗e4.

So on the basis of the above argument, let us accept for the moment that the French has its own peculiar idiosyncrasies which allow you to take certain liberties as regards general rules of good opening play. Then the next question is: what are the positive features of 3...h6?

One of the useful points of 3...h6 is that Black protects square g5. This is immediately obvious by pointing to the classical main line 3...♗c3 ♗f6 4...♙g5. Moreover, in many middle-game positions Black has to play h6 at some point to guard square g5, and the dark squares on the kingside in general. To extend this point still further, not only does Black need to guard the g5 square, in many early middle-game positions he actually plays g5, threatening the white knight on f3 which defends d4 and e5.

However, to end this introduction and come back to concrete play (and remember chess is a very concrete game!), the move 3...h6 has some very specific points. Thus, after 3...♗c3 h6 4...♗f3 ♗f6 White would like to play 5.e5. Yet this is solidly met by 5...♗e4!, as after 6...♗xe4 dxe4 the extra tempo is detrimental to White (note that 3...h6 has taken

away the option of ♗g5). This compares favourably with the (slightly dubious) line 3...♗c3/d2 ♗f6 4.e5 ♗e4 5...♗xe4 dxe4.

Another specific point of 3...h6 – also against 3...♗c3 – is that 4...♙d3 is met by 4...♗c6 attacking d4, when after 5...♗f3 ♗b4! an interesting position arises. By the way, after 3...♗d2 h6 4...♙d3 Black has 4...c5 as a concrete and perfectly playable line (a possible ♙b5 check at some point would give Black the extra move h6 – so no ♙g5!).

It is also useful to point out that after both 3...♗c3 h6 and 3...♗d2 h6 the move 4.e5 gives Black good play after 4...c5, as the knights are obstructing White's natural play in this French Advance type of position. Similarly, there is nothing to be gained from the French Exchange Variation deferred with 4...exd5 (again a knight on c3 or d2 makes no particularly strong contribution).

So, dear reader, thank you for bearing with me so far. I hope your attitude towards 3...h6 is now somewhat similar to Polonius's as he comments upon Hamlet's ramblings: 'Though this be madness, yet there is method in't.'

□ **Vugar Gashimov**

■ **Viacheslav Eingorn**

Bled Olympiad 2002

### 1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3...♗c3 h6 4...♙d3

This develops a piece and protects the e4 square, so that 4...♗f6 will be met by 5.e5. White's main alternative is 4...♗f3, which we shall examine in some detail:

I 4...♗f3 ♗f6 (White is of course slightly better after 4...dxe4 5...♗xe4 ♗d7 6...♙d3 ♗g6 7...♖e2 ♗xe4 8...♙xe4, when in Panajotov-Ivanov, Pamporovo 2001, Black blundered with 8...♗f6? 9...♙xb7!±), and here the line forks:

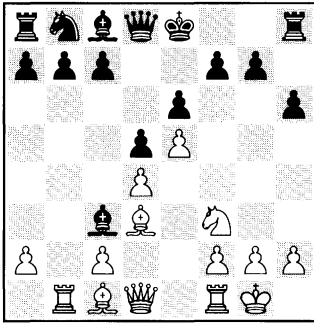
A) 5...♙d3 and now Black has a choice:

A1) 5...♗c6 6.0-0 (here 6.e5!? ♗d7 7.a3

is better for White in my opinion) 6...♙e7 7.e5 ♘d7 8.♙e3 ♚b4 9.♙e2 c5 10.a3 ♘c6 11.♙b5 a6 12.♙xc6 bxc6 13.♚e2 cxd4 14.♚exd4 ♖c7 15.♙f4 c5 16.♚b3 g5 17.♙g3 a5 18.a4 ♙b7 19.♖e2 ♙a6 20.♖e3 ♙xf1, and Black was winning, although he ended up losing in Barsky-Sebald, Dortmund 1999. The move 5...♚c6 is not the most logical choice here, as it does not attack d4.

A2) Better looks Eingorn's suggestion of 5...c5!? which has not been tested in practice.

A3) White must be prepared to sacrifice material after: 5...♙b4 6.e5 ♚e4 7.0-0 ♚xc3 8.bxc3 ♙xc3 9.♖b1



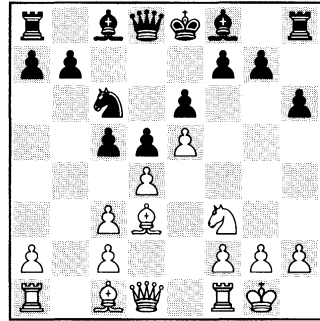
White has reasonable compensation owing to his good development, and the awkward position of the bishop on c3. Tournament practice has seen:

● 9...a5 10.♖b3 ♙b4 11.c4 b6 12.♖c2 ♙e7 13.cxd5 exd5 14.♙b5+ ♖f8 15.♙e3 with good compensation in Bruzon-Arencibia, Havana 2004.

● 9...c5 (this looks more natural) 10.♖b3 cxd4 11.♙a3 a6 12.♖c1 (planning 13.♖f4) 12...g5! 13.h4 g4 14.♚h2 ♖xh4 15.g3 ♖h5 and White did not have enough in A.Horvath-Borgo, Zemplinska Sirava 2004.

B) 5.e5 is solidly met by 5...♚e4! (Black takes advantage of the inclusion of 3...h6 and 4.♚f3 when compared to the line 3...♚f6 4.e5 ♚e4?!, since White cannot take on e4 now – 6.♚xe4 dxe4 7.♚g1 c5 is nice for Black – he

must allow a Winawer structure without obtaining the dark-squared bishop in return) 6.♙d3 ♚xc3 7.bxc3 c5 8.0-0 ♚c6



White may have an edge in development but Black has a structural advantage here. Bluvshstein-Legky, Montreal 2003, went 9.♙e3 ♖a5 10.dxc5 ♖xc3 11.♚d4 a6?! (stronger is 11...♙d7 12.♚b5 ♖xe5 13.♖e1 a6 14.♚d6+ ♙xd6 15.f4 ♖xe3+!? (or 15...♖c3) 16.♖xe3 ♙xc5) 12.♚xc6 bxc6 13.♖g4 ♖xe5 14.♖a4 ♖c7 15.♙d4 ♙d7 16.♖ae1, and White had excellent compensation, although he later lost due to a blunder.

II Practice has also seen 4.♙e3, when White gains a slight plus after 4...♚f6 5.e5 ♚fd7 6.f4. Widmer-Fischinger, Schwarzach 2000, went: 6...g6 7.♚f3 b6 8.♖d2 c6 9.♖f2 ♙a6 10.♖g3 ♙xf1 11.♖xf1±.

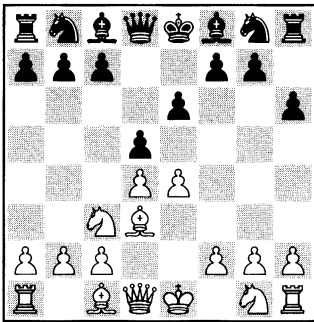
The inventor of 3...h6 twice played 4...♙b4 5.a3 (sacrificing a pawn. Or 5.e5 c5 6.dxc5 ♚e7 7.♚f3 ♚f5 8.♙d2 ♙xc5 9.♙d3 ♚c6 10.♖e2 0-0 11.0-0-0 ♚fd4 12.♚xd4 ♙xd4 13.f4 f6, and Black was fine in Letreguilly-Bricard, St Affrique 2002) 5...♙xc3+ 6.bxc3 dxe4 7.f3 ♚c6 8.♙b5 ♙d7 9.♚h3 exf3 10.♖xf3 ♖f6 11.♖g3 ♚ge7 12.♖f1 ♖g6 13.♖f2 ♚d5 14.♚f4 ♚xf4 15.♙xf4 0-0-0, with an interesting position, Guedon-Bricard, St Affrique 2002.

III Nothing much is gained by 'transposing' to the Exchange Variation: 4.exd5 exd5 5.♙d3 ♚f6 6.♚ge2 c5 (Black is

not forced to play this, of course) 7.dxc5 ♟xc5 8.♟f4 0-0 9.♚d2 ♘c6 10.a3 ♜e8 11.0-0 a6, and Finkel assesses this position from the game Skripchenko-Bricard, Montpellier 1998, as unclear.

IV A cheeky answer to 3...h6 is **4.a3**. The main point is 4...♟f6 5.e5. Black may go for an acceptable Rubinstein Variation with 4...dxe4 5.♟xe4 ♘d7. Compared to the normal line Black has prevented a future ♟g5, while a3 serves no useful purpose.

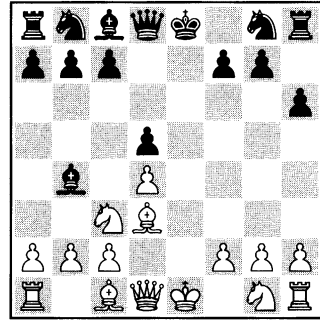
Let us return to our main game after 3...h6 4.♟d3. How can Black take advantage of White's last move?



**4...♟c6!**

This emphasizes the downside of 4.♟d3: pawn d4 is undefended. While this is easily fixed with 5.♟f3, Black has another surprise in store.

It is also logical to implement c5 at some point (again this would stress the disadvantage of 4.♟d3). However, the immediate 4...c5?! is met by 5.exd5 exd5 6.dxc5, when White is slightly better, as 6...♟xc5 fails to 7.♟b5+, winning a pawn. Bricard goes his own way here with 4...♟b4, which prepares 5...♟f6. Nothing special now is gained by 5.♚g4!?, as 5...dxe4 6.♚xg7 ♚f6 7.♚xf6 ♘xf6 8.♟c4 ♘c6 looks OK for Black (this is an analysis by Finkel who assesses it as ∞). Instead, after 4...♟b4, Bricard has twice encountered 5.exd5 exd5.



● 6.♚f3!? ♘c6 7.♟e2 ♚f6!?! (an interesting sacrifice) 8.♚xd5 ♘ge7 9.♚f3 ♚xf3 10.gxf3 ♟f5 11.♟e4 0-0-0 12.♟e3 ♟xc3+ 13.bxc3 ♟xe4 14.fxe4 f5 15.f3 ♜he8 16.h4 fxe4 17.fxe4 ♟f5! 18.exf5 ♜xe3 19.♟f2 ♞de8 20.♞a1 ♟d7 21.♟g3 ♜xc3 22.♜xe8 ♟xe8 23.♟h5 ♟xd4 24.♟xg7+ ♟f7, and Black is winning. Van Elst-Bricard, Toulouse 1998.

● 6.a3 ♟e7 7.♚f3 (otherwise Black has easy equality) 7...♟f6 8.h3 c5 only now 9.dxc5 ♘c6 10.♟ge2 (perhaps 10.b4!?) 10...♟xc5 11.♟f4 ♟e6 12.0-0-0 a6 13.♟c4 d4 14.♟xe6 fxe6 15.♟e4 ♘e4 16.♚xe4 ♚f6 17.♟g3 Black is slightly worse, but he drew in Fressinet-Bricard, Val d'Isère 2002.

**5.♟f3 ♘b4!**

The point of Black's set-up is that after chasing away the bishop he can finally implement the manoeuvre 6...♟f6 7.e5 ♘e4.

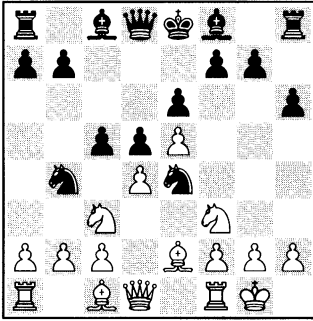
**6.♟e2**

The most sensible answer. Naturally, White does not allow the exchange of his bishop. The alternative is 6.♟b5+. The point of this check is to disrupt Black's coordination after either 6...♟d7 7.♟e2 or 6...c6 7.♟e2. Let us investigate both options:

Covering the check with the bishop has received no practical tests yet: 6...♟d7 7.♟e2 dxe4 8.♟xe4 ♟c6 9.♟g3?! ♟xf3 10.♟xf3 ♚xd4! So White should not play 9.♟g3 and settle for 9.♟c3 or 9.♟ed2. However, in either case Black should be fine. A final

thought is 6.♖b5+ ♕d7 7.♗xd7+ ♜xd7 8.♘e5!? – food for thought.

Recent experience has seen: 6...c6 7.♗e2 ♘f6 8.e5 ♘e4 9.0-0 c5



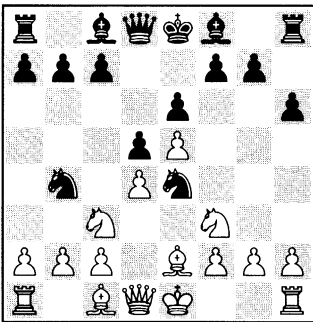
● 10.a3 ♘xc3 11.bxc3 ♘c6 12.♘e1 ♜a5 13.♗d2 ♜a4 14.♘f3 b6 15.dxc5 ♗xc5 16.♘d4 ♘xd4 17.cxd4 ♜xd4 18.♖b5+ ♗d7 19.♗xd7+ ♘xd7 20.♜e2 ♜c4 with insufficient compensation in Vratonjic-Certic, Petrovac 2004.

● 10.♗e3 ♘xc3 11.bxc3 ♘c6 12.dxc5 ♜a5 13.♘d4 ♜xc3 14.♘b5 ♜xe5 15.♜d2 and White has enough for the pawn, De la Riva-Legky, France tt 2004.

**6...♘f6**

Finally Black starts developing his kingside.

**7.e5 ♘e4**



The pawn chain reveals that Black has played the French Defence. However, the knights are most unusually placed at e4 and b4. Their ag-

gressive placement is an achievement in itself. Naturally, Black will not be able to keep them there, but White will have to make a concession in the process of kicking them back. White cannot take on e4, as he will lose the d4-pawn. Nor is he able to avoid the exchange of a pair of knights. Of course, 8.♘b1 (to prevent the exchange) 8...c5 9.c3 ♘c6 is too slow. Gashimov's next move allows the swap on c3, but gains some time.

**8.a3**

Otherwise Black will execute the strategically desirable 8...c5. The game Delorme-Legky, France tt 2003, saw: 8.♗e3 c5 9.dxc5 ♘xc3 10.bxc3 ♘c6 11.0-0 ♜a5 12.c4 (stronger is 12.♘d4 which would transpose to De la Riva-Legky above – see the note to 6.♗e2) 12...♗xc5 13.cxd5 exd5 14.♘d4 (or 14.♜xd5 ♗xe3 15.♜xa5 ♗xf2+ 16.♗xf2 ♘xa5) 14...♗xd4! (giving up his 'good' bishop to give the 'bad French' bishop an excellent outpost) 15.♗xd4 0-0 16.f4 ♗f5 17.c3 ♜ac8 18.♗g4 ♘xd4 19.cxd4 ♗c2 20.♜e2 ♜c4 21.e6 ♗e4 22.♗ac1 ♜xc1 23.♜xc1 fxe6 24.♗xe6+ ♖h8.

In A.Kovacevic-Certic, Petrovac 2004, play was about equal after 8.0-0 c5 9.♗e3 cxd4 (9...♘c6) 10.♘xd4 ♘xc3 11.bxc3 ♘c6 12.c4 ♗e7 13.cxd5 exd5 14.f4 0-0.

**8...♘xc3**

There is no point in preserving the knight on its outpost. After 8...♘c6 9.♜d3 will force the exchange anyway, without compromising the white pawn structure 9...♘xc3 10.♜xc3 (Eingorn).

**9.bxc3 ♘c6 10.0-0 ♘a5**

In playing the knight to the edge of the board, Eingorn plays his seventh(!) knight move in a row. Still, his play is entirely logical: c5 is being prepared. Although only the knights have left their stables, Black can easily get away with keeping the rest of his army on the bottom rank. After all, the position is closed and he has no weaknesses.

**11. ♖d3**

White would like to play the standard attacking move 11. ♖g5 if it wasn't for Black's pawn on h6. Perhaps he should have settled for a more passive square with 11. ♖e1, preparing the march of the f-pawn.

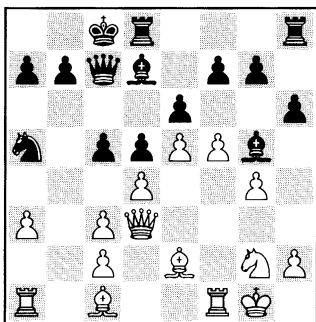
**11... ♗d7 12. ♖e1**

Preparing to attack the base of Black's pawn chain with f4-f5. Black similarly goes

**12... c5 13. f4 ♖c7 14. g4 0-0-0**

Nothing wrong with this move, but 14...g6, to stop f5 for the moment, looks playable too.

**15. f5 ♗e7 16. ♖g2 ♗g5**



It goes too far to call this a point of 3...h6, but the move was necessary in view of 17.f6.

A typically tense situation with castling on opposite sides of the board has arisen. Black is fine and I'm sure that a supporter of the Winawer would feel quite confident here. Note that Eingorn commits a serious inaccuracy on move 23 and blunders two moves later in a difficult position.

**17. ♗f4 ♖c6 18. ♗g3 ♖a5**

Eingorn evaluates this position as unclear.

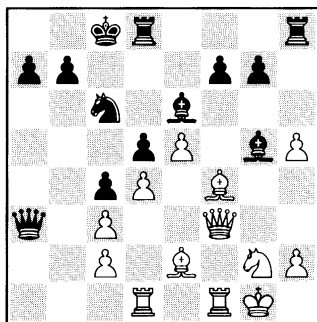
**19. ♖ad1**

Not 19.h4? c4 20. ♖f3 ♗d2.

**19...h5 20. fxh6**

Again 20.h4 is not possible because of 20...c4 21. ♖f3 hxg4 22. ♖xg4 ♗h6.

**20... ♗xe6 21. gxh5 c4 22. ♖f3 ♖xa3 23. ♗f4**



**23... ♗e7?**

Correct was 23... ♗h6 24. ♗xh6 gxh6, as indicated by Eingorn.

**24. ♗d2 ♖b2 25. ♖e3 ♗g5?**

This is a blunder, 25... ♖b6 had to be tried.

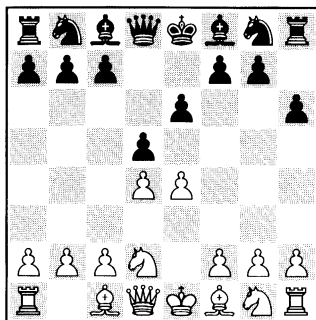
**26. ♖xc4! dxc4 27. ♗xg5+- ♖de8 28. ♖e4 f6 29. ♗c1 ♖b6 30. ♗e3 f5 31. ♖g2 ♖d8 32. ♖b1 ♖a5 33. ♗f3 ♗d5 34. ♗xd5 ♖xd5 35. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 36. ♖xf5 b5 37. ♖g2 a5 38. ♖f3 b4 39. ♖e4 ♖hd8 40. ♗g5 bxc3 41. ♗xd8 ♖xd4+ 42. ♖e3 ♖xd8** And White won.

□ John Shaw

■ Viacheslav Eingorn

Bad Wiessee 2003

**1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3. ♖d2 h6**



In a way this looks even more pointless than after 3.♘c3. Having placed the knight on d2, White will not be able to play ♕g5 any time soon. Even worse, after 4.♗g3 ♖f6 5.e5 (the main line) Black cannot even favourably exchange his knight with 5...♗e4 as 6.♗d3 forces 6...♗xd2 7.♗xd2, with a big edge in development. Waiting for White to commit himself is one of the big points of 3...h6 against the Tarrasch. Compare this to the two main lines: 3...c5 and 3...♗f6. In the 3...c5 line White will play his g1-knight to f3, while in the 3...♗f6 line White will usually play ♖g1-e2 and ♗d2-f3 (I am oversimplifying matters, of course, for the sake of argument). Thus it follows that with 3...h6 Black uses the cyclist's technique of *sur place*. He will vary his approach (a set-up with c5 or with ♗f6) in accordance with White's actions. In my opinion, this strategy (3...h6 against the Tarrasch) is riskier than 3...h6 versus 3.♘c3.

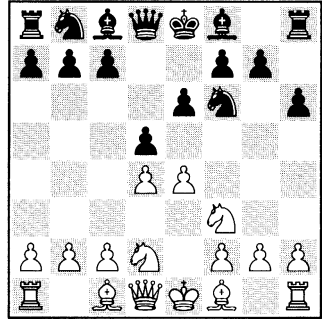
**4.♗g3**

After this move plans with an early c5 no longer make sense. For example, 4...c5 5.exd5 exd5 6.♗b5+ and in this normal position from the Tarrasch 3...h6 is a waste of time compared to 4.♗g3. It is against the alternatives for 4.♗g3 that 4...c5 forms a good reply:

- 4.c3 c5 (playable is 4...dxe4 5.♗xe4 ♗d7 when White is slightly better) 5.exd5 exd5 6.♗g3 ♗c6 7.♗b5 cxd4 8.0-0!? ♗d7 (8...dxc3!?) 9.♗b3 ♖f6 10.♞e1+ ♗e7 11.♗xc6 (11.♗bxd4) 11...bxc6 12.♖xd4 0-0 13.♗f4 ♞e8 14.h3 ♖b6 15.♗e5 ♞ad8 16.♞ad1± Conquest-Bricard, Reykjavik 2000. Instead of 5...exd5, Black can also take back with the Queen. In Kudrin-Atalik, Lindsborg 2003, Black equalized easily after 5...♖xd5 6.♗g3 cxd4 7.♗xd4 ♖f6 8.♗2f3 ♗c5 9.♗e2 ♗c6 10.♗xc6 ♖xc6 11.0-0 ♖c7 12.♗d3 0-0 13.♖e2 b6.
- 4.♗d3 c5 (but not 4...♖f6 5.e5 ♖f7

6.♗e2±) 5.dxc5 ♗xc5 6.♗g3 ♖f6 7.e5 (7.exd5=) 7...♗fd7 8.♗b3 ♗b6 9.♗f4 g5!? 10.♗g3 ♗c6 11.h3 ♖e7 12.c3 ♗c5 13.♗xc5 (13.♗c2) 13...♖xc5 14.♗d2? ♗xe5!± Midoux-Bricard, Toulouse 1998.

**4...♗f6**



**5.e5**

Clearly the way to proceed, as 5...♗e4 6.♗d3 is better for White.

Nothing is gained by: 5.exd5 exd5 6.♗d3 ♗d6 7.0-0 0-0= 8.♞e1 ♗c6 9.c3 ♗g4 10.♖b3 ♞b8 11.♗e5 ♗xe5 12.dxe5 ♗d7 13.♖xd5 ♗dxe5, with equality in Manik-Eingorn, Vienna 2003.

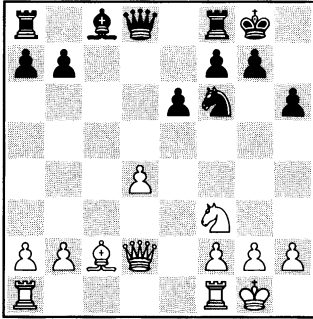
A more serious attempt is 5.♗d3. It is possible to go for positions similar to the Rubinstein Variation with 5...dxe4 6.♗xe4 ♗xe4 7.♗xe4 ♗d7, when White has his normal opening advantage.

More ambitious, though, is 5...c5:

A) 6.dxc5 dxe4 (here 6...♗xc5 transposes to Midoux-Bricard above) 7.♗xe4 ♗xe4 8.♗xe4 ♖xd1+ 9.♗xd1 ♗xc5 10.♗e2 0-0?! (now White gains a pleasant endgame edge; 10...♗d7 is stronger) 11.♗e3± ♗xe3 12.♗xe3 f5 13.♗d3 ♗c6 14.♞ad1 e5 15.♗c4+ ♗h7 16.♗d5 e4 17.♗xc6 bxc6 18.♗e5± Marciano-Bricard, French Championship, Narbonne 1997.

B) 6.c3?! cxd4 7.cxd4 dxe4 8.♗xe4 ♗b4+ 9.♗d2 ♗xd2+ 10.♖xd2 ♗xe4 11.♗xe4 ♗d7

12.0-0 ♖f6 13.♗c2 0-0. Black has exchanged two sets of minor pieces, which is good for him, as he is playing against an isolated pawn. His chances are no worse.

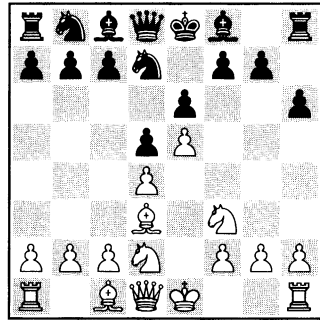


14.♗e5 ♖b6 15.♞ad1 ♞d8 (15...♗d7 allows White to equalize with 16.d5! exd5 (16...♗b5 17.dxe6! ♖xe6 18.♞fe1 ♖xa2? 19.♖b4! ♗c6 20.♗b3 ♖a6 21.♖e7±) 17.♗xd7 ♗xd7 18.♖xd5 ♗f6 19.♖b3=) 16.f4!? ♗d7 17.g4!? ♗b5 18.♞f2 ♗d7 19.♖e3 ♞ac8 20.♗b1 ♞c7 21.h4 ♗f8 22.g5 h5 23.♞fd2 g6 24.♗e4 ♗c6 25.♗xc6 bxc6. Now that White's offensive on the kingside has been stopped it is clear that he has merely created weaknesses in his own camp. Nevednichy-Eingorn, Bad Wörishofen 2002.

C) 6.exd5 ♖xd5 7.dxc5 ♗xc5 8.0-0 b6 9.♗b3 ♗e7 10.♗f4 ♗b7 11.c4 ♖d8 12.♗e5 ♗c6 13.♗xc6 ♗xc6 14.♖e2 ♖d7 and after this accurate move – Black prepares to answer 15.♞ad1 with 15...♖b7 – the players agreed a draw in Dolmatov-V.Popov, St Petersburg 2004.

**5...♗fd7 6.♗d3**

The high level rapid encounter – Vallejo-Morozevich, Monaco 2004 – led to mutual chances after 6.c3 c5 7.a3!? ♗e7 8.♗d3 a5 (aiming for 9...a4) 9.b3 b6 10.♗b5 (to answer 10...♗a6 with 11.a4!) 10...♗a6! 11.0-0 ♗c7 12.♗e2 a4 13.b4 ♗a6.



**6...c5**

The standard way to operate against White's pawn chain. Bricard has played a slower plan in the past: 6...b6!? 7.0-0 a5 8.a4 ♗a6 9.♖e2 ♖c8 10.♞d1 ♗xd3 11.♖xd3 ♖a6 12.c4 ♗c6 13.b3 ♗b4 14.♖b1 ♗e7 15.♗a3 c6̄ Szlyar-Bricard, Toulouse 1998.

**7.c3**

White played more aggressively in Ginsburg-Eingorn, Metz 2003, with 7.c4. I will give the game with brief comments: 7...cxd4 8.cxd5 ♗c5 9.♗b5+ ♗d7 10.♗xd7+ ♖xd7 (here 10...♗bxd7! is stronger) 11.d6 ♖b5 (this looks dangerous, but the tactics don't work for Black) 12.♗xd4 ♖b4 (not 12...♗d3+ 13.♗f1 ♖xe5 14.♗2f3 ♖e4 15.♗e3±) 13.♗f3 ♗d3+ 14.♗f1 ♗c6 15.♖e2 ♗f4 (the best choice considering: 15...♗xc1 16.♞xc1 ♖xb2 17.♞b1 ♖xa2 18.♞xb7± and 15...♖b5 16.♗e1 ♗cxe5 17.f4+–) 16.a3 (16.♖c4 is an alternative) 16...♖a4 17.b3 ♗xe2 (better than 17...♖a5 18.♖e4 ♖a6+ 19.♗c4 or 18...♗g6 19.♗b2) 18.bxa4 ♗c3 19.♗b2 (or 19.♗c4 ♗xa4 20.♗e3 (20.♞b1 0-0-0) 20...f6 21.♗d4 ♗xe5 22.♗xe5 fxe5 23.♗xe6 ♗d7) 19...♗xa4 20.♞b1 f6! 21.exf6 ♗xb2 22.♞xb2 0-0-0! 23.fxg7 ♗xg7 24.♞b3 ♗xd6 25.♖e2 b6 26.♞c1 ♗d7 27.♗c4 ♗d5 28.♗e3 ♞d6 (Black has no reason to avoid the draw, since 28...♞a5 29.♞d3+ ♖c7 30.♗d4 ♗xd4 31.♞xd4 ♞c5 32.♞xc5 bxc5 33.♞h4 and

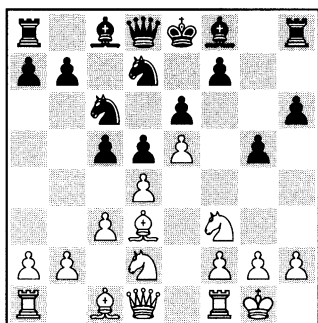
28...♟d4+ 29.♟xd4 ♚xd4 30.♚bc3 are both better for White) 29.♟c4 ♚d5 30.♟e3 ♚d6 31.♟c4 ½-½.

**7...♟c6**

We have reached a position from the French Tarrasch: 3.♟d2 ♟f6 4.e5 ♟f7 5.♟gf3 c5 6.c3 ♟c6 7.♚d3, where Black plays all sorts of moves but not 7...g5!? – a set-up that comes closest to our main game.

**8.0-0 g5!?**

This radical follow-up of 3...h6 is, of course, not forced.



**9.dxc5**

Black obtains a decent game after 9.h3 ♚b6 10.dxc5 ♟xc5 11.♚c2 ♟d7 12.♚e1 ♚g7 13.c4 0-0 14.cxd5 exd5 15.♟b3 ♟dxe5 16.♟xe5 ♟xe5, Jansa-Legky, France tt 2004.

**9...♚xc5**

Here 9...♟dxe5 10.♚b5 ♟xf3+ 11.♟xf3 ♚xc5 12.c4 gives White considerable play for the pawn.

**10.♟b3 ♚b6 11.♚e1 ♚c7**

Building up the pressure on e5. After 11...g4 12.♟fd4 White will get clear structural compensation for the pawn he is going to lose on e5.

**12.♚b5 ♟c5**

An alternative is 12...a6!? 13.♚a4 (13.♚xc6 bxc6 14.a4 c5 15.a5 ♚a7) 13...♚xf2+!? 14.♟xf2 b5. The rest of the game sees Ein-

gorn defending well to hold his slightly inferior position.

**13.♚e3 ♟xb3 14.axb3 ♚d7**

This threatens 15...♟e5.

**15.♚xc6 bxc6 16.b4**

Likewise, 16.♚xb6 ♚xb6 17.b4 c5 18.bxc5 ♚xc5 also transposes to the game.

**16...c5**

Otherwise 17.♚xc5 would strangle Black.

**17.bxc5 ♚xc5 18.♚xc5**

White could also try 18.♚d4 or 18.b4.

**18...♚xc5 19.♟d4 ♚b8 20.♚a2 a5!?**

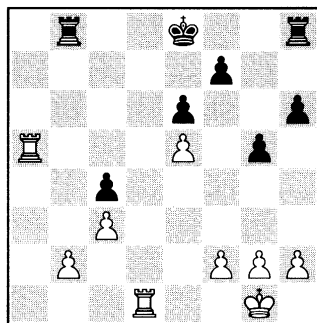
To play a4 on the next move.

**21.♟b3**

Winning a pawn, but Eingorn has assessed the double rook ending that arises as a draw.

**21...♚c4 22.♚xa5 ♚a4 23.♟d2 ♚xd1**

**24.♟xc4 dxc4 25.♚xd1**



White is a pawn up, but b2 and e5 are weak. There is little White can do to prevent the transition to a drawish single rook ending.

**25...0-0** Always nice to castle this late.

**26.♚d2 ♚fd8 27.♚xd8+ ♚xd8** Because

of the weak back rank, Black gains the time to keep White's rook passive. **28.g4 ♚b8 29.♚c5 ♚xb2 30.♚xc4 ♚e2** The active rook and the weak e- and c-pawns ensure that White has no winning chances.

**31.♚c5 ♚e1+ 32.♟g2 ♟g7 33.c4 ♟g6**

**34.h3 h5 35.♟f3 h4** Now even h3 is

weak. **36.♚b5 ♚h1 37.♟g2 ♚c1**

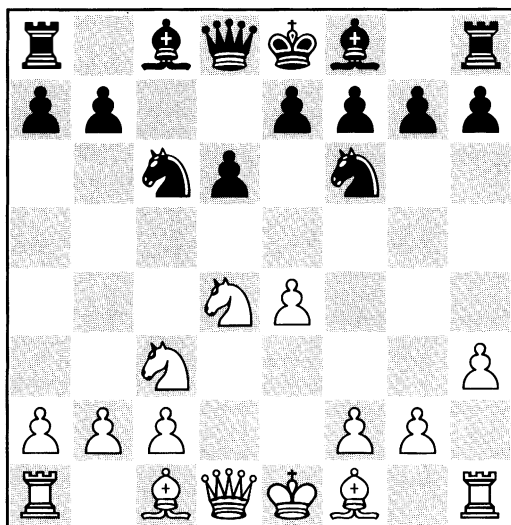
**38.♚c5** Draw.



# CHAPTER 9

## *Sergei Movsesian*

### Play like a Beginner



NIC KEY SI 25.1

### 6.h3 against the Classical Sicilian

White has many options against the Classical Sicilian. The Rauzer (6.♘g5), the Sozin/Velimirovic (6.♘c4) or the Boleslavsky/Scheveningen complex (6.♘e2). Theoretically the Rauzer is perhaps the best option, but all of them have a perfect right to exist, and may cause Black players some headaches. However, make no mistake about it: they will not surprise your opponent. In the 'classical' Scheveningen move order – 1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♘xd4 ♘f6 5.♘c3 e6 – White has the Keres Attack with 6.g4. Now wouldn't it be nice if something like that existed here too?

**1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♘xd4**

**♘f6 5.♘c3 ♘c6 6.h3**

Preparing 7.g4? Surely, such a beginner's move can never be a serious option? However, please don't dismiss 6.h3 straightaway. Sergei Movsesian has played this move with great success. He demonstrates his pet line in three annotated games.

□ **Sergei Movsesian**

■ **Jesper Hall**

Malmö 1999

**1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♘xd4 ♘f6 5.♘c3 d6 6.h3 g6**

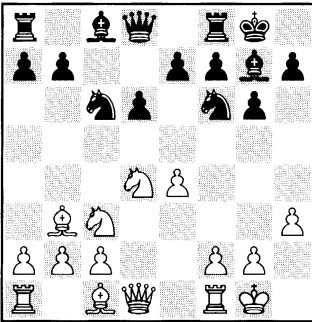
Black goes for the Dragon. 'Show me where

h3 comes in useful now'. Now White could very well play the fianchetto variation with 7.g3 (as in Movsesian-Stocek, Czech tt 1998/99), or even the extended version 7.g4. Even more subtle would be 7.fde2, not only postponing the choice between the normal and the extended fianchetto, but also avoiding 7...fxd4. White can also play 7.fxc4 which may lead to positions usually reached via the Accelerated Dragon – and, yes, h3 is useful there, too!

**7.fxc4 8.g7 8.fxb3 0-0**

Another option is the risky 8...fxe4!?, when after 9.fxc6 fxc3+ 10.bxc3 bxc6 11.fxd4 f6 12.fh6 fb6 13.fh4 White has certain compensation for the sacrificed pawn, though a tough black defender may opine that he still has some things to prove...

**9.0-0**



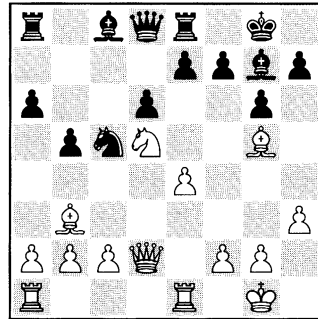
**9...fxd4 10.fxd4 f6 11.fxd1 f5 12.fh1 a6**

Too aggressive is 12...a5 13.fxc4 a4 14.a3 f6 15.f5 when White has the slightly better position.

**13.fg5**

White's aim is to increase the pressure on the e7-pawn. In this game Black failed to solve the problems, as even several exchanges didn't help.

**13...f8 14.f2 b5 15.f5**

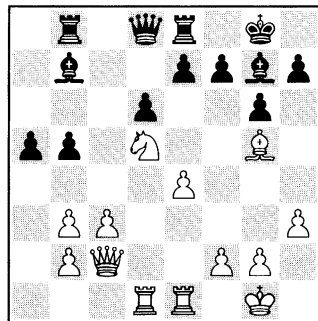


**15...f7**

15...f7 is followed by a strong blow 16.e5! fxa1 17.exd6 fxd6 18.fxe7 fc6 19.fxa1 fb3 20.axb3 fb7 21.c4! with a strong attack, as 21...bxc4 22.bxc4 fc4 loses due to the simple 23.f6+ g7 24.fxe8+ f8 25.fb2+.

**16.c3 f8 17.f2 a4 18.f3 c5**  
18...fb6 19.fxb6 fb6 20.f4! e6 21.fad1 fe5 22.fh4 with a pleasant advantage.

**19.fad1 fb3 20.axb3 a5 21.fc2**



Preparing e4-e5 and forcing Black to weaken the position.

**21...h6 22.f4 fd5 23.fxd5**

Now White targets Black's weak pawns and

also the attack on the kingside suddenly starts.

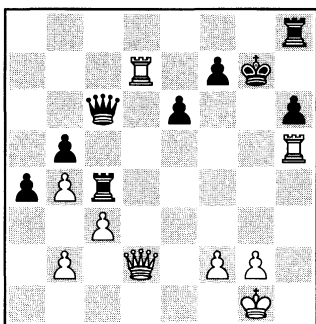
**23...♖b6 24.h4! a4 25.b4 ♖bc8 26.♗d2 ♘h7 27.e5± dxe5 28.♙xe5 e6 29.♗d7 ♙xe5**

29...♗cd8 30.♗xf7 ♗xd2 31.♗xg7+ ♘h8 32.♗b7+-.

**30.♗xe5 ♘g7 31.h5 ♖c4 32.hxg6 ♘xg6 33.♗d3+ ♘g7 34.♗h5 ♖c6**

Black is also lost after 34...♗b8 35.♗xh6 (35.g3) 35...♘xh6 36.♗xf7 ♗h8 37.♗f6+ ♘g5 38.♗g6+ ♘h4 39.♗f3+-; or 34...e5 35.♗xf7+ ♘xf7 36.♗h7+ ♘f8 37.♗f5+.

**35.♗d2 ♗h8**



**36.♗g5+ ♘f8**

36...hxg5 37.♗xg5+ ♘f8 38.♗e7+ ♘g7 39.♗xf7+ ♘h6 40.♗f6+ ♘h5 41.♗xh8+; 36...♘f6 37.♗g3+-.

**37.♗d8+ ♘e7 38.♗xh8 hxg5 39.♗d8**  
Mate.

□ Sergei Movsesian

■ Vladimir Baklan

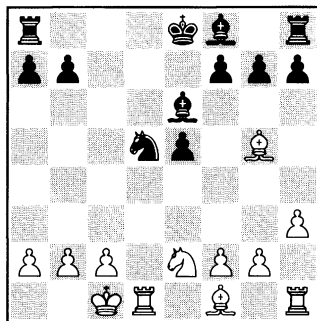
Groningen 1998

**1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♘xd4 ♘f6 5.♘c3 ♘c6 6.h3 e5**

Black is trying to clarify the situation in the centre, as White's 6.h3 looks so slow, but there are some drawbacks...

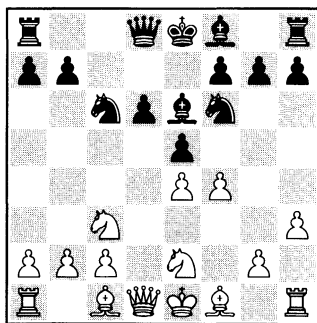
**7.♘de2 ♙e6**

Here 7...d5 looks too risky: 8.exd5 ♘b4 9.♙g5 ♘bxd5 10.♘xd5 ♗xd5 11.♗xd5 ♘xd5 12.0-0-0 ♙e6



13.♘f4!! ♙e7 14.♙b5+ ♘f8 15.♙xe7+ ♘xe7 16.♘xe6+ fxe6 17.♗d7 ended as a disaster for Black in Mikhaletz-Kravets, Lvov 1997.

**8.f4**



Positions arising after 6...e5 seemingly have nothing to do with 'normal' Sicilians at all! 8...exf4 gave White very comfortable attacking play, with excellent control over the d5-square. 9.♘xf4 ♙e7 10.♙e3 0-0 11.♗d2 ♘e5 12.0-0-a6 13.g4 ♖c8 14.♘b1 b5 15.g5 ♘f7 16.h4± Movsesian-Milov, Panormo (blitz) 2002.

8...♘h5!? 9.g3 exf4 10.♙xf4 ♙e7 11.♗d2

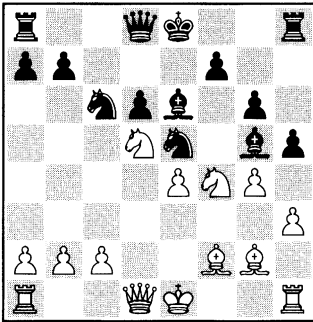
♟e5 12.♞d4 ♞xf4 13.♙b5+! ♙d7 14.gxf4  
 ♙h4+ 15.♞e2 ♞c6 16.♞f3 0-0 17.♞ad1±  
 and White is better – again due to his control  
 over the d5-square. Movsesian-Peptan, Gro-  
 ningen 1997.

Baklan plays yet another move in this com-  
 plicated position.

**8...g6!? 9.g4 ♞d7 10.♙e3 ♙e7!?  
 11.♙f2**

Of course, White would like to play 11.f5 but  
 after 11...♙h4+ 12.♞d2 ♙c4 Black gets per-  
 fect play.

**11...exf4 12.♞xf4 ♞de5 13.♙g2 ♙g5  
 14.♞cd5 h5**



With this sharp move Black starts a kingside  
 offensive. Instead, 14...♞e7 doesn't solve  
 the d5 square problem 15.0-0 ♞xd5  
 16.♞xe6 fxe6 17.exd5±.

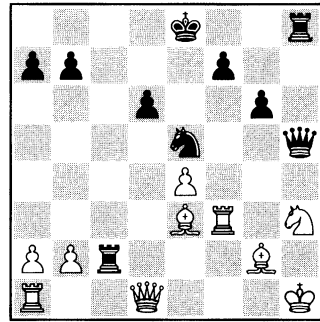
**15.gxh5 ♙xf4 16.♞xf4 ♖g5 17.♖c1  
 ♜c8 18.0-0 ♙c4?!**

Black had several options here:

● 18...gxh5 19.♞xe6 ♖xc1 20.♞g7+ ♞f8  
 21.♜axc1 ♞xg7 22.♜cd1±.

● Probably the best practical move was  
 18...♙xh3!? 19.♞xh3 ♞f3+ 20.♞h1 ♖xh5  
 21.♙e3 ♞ce5 22.♖d1 ♜xc2!. After this  
 spectacular move White can either take the  
 knight or the rook:

– Capturing the knight with 23.♜xf3 loses  
 on the spot because of



23...♖xf3!!.. However, not the more natural  
 23...♞xf3 24.♖xc2 ♖xh3+ 25.♙xh3 ♜xh3+  
 26.♞g2 ♜h2+ 27.♞xf3 ♜xc2 28.♙d4 win-  
 ning.

– Taking the rook leaves good practical  
 chances to survive after 23.♖xc2 ♖xh3+  
 24.♙xh3 ♜xh3+ 25.♞g2 ♜h2+ 26.♞g3  
 ♜xc2 27.♜xf3 ♞xf3 28.♞xf3 ♜xb2  
 29.♙xa7 f5.

**19.♞d1 gxh5 20.♜xd6?!**

This is clearly not White's best option. Sim-  
 ply 20.b3 ♙a6 21.c4! would have brought  
 White a big advantage. For example, 21...b5  
 22.♜xd6 bxc4 23.♖e3±.

**20...♙g8 21.♞h1 ♙e2! 22.♖e3 ♞c4  
 23.♖xe2!?**

Sacrificing the exchange rather than going  
 for the unclear 23.♜xc6 ♞xe3 24.♜xc8+  
 ♞d7 25.♜xg8 ♖xf4!.

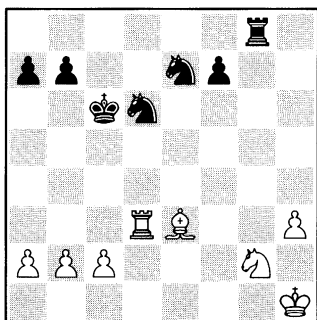
**23...♞xd6 24.♙e3 ♖e5 25.♖f3±  
 ♜xg2**

Black was already pretty short of time and  
 out of practical considerations decides to  
 simplify the position.

**26.♞xg2 ♖xe4 27.♖xh5 ♞d7 28.♞d1  
 ♜g8 29.♖d5?!**

Much easier was 29.♖xf7+ ♞e7 30.♖f2  
 ♜xg2 31.♖xg2 ♖xe3 32.♖xb7+ ♞e6  
 33.♖b3+ ♖xb3 34.axb3 and White should  
 win.

**29...♖xd5 30.♜xd5 ♞e7 31.♞d3 ♞c6**



## 32. ♖f4?

If you don't see a clear plan? Just grab the pawn and think later! 32. ♖xa7!

32... ♗e4 33. ♖h2 ♗d5 34. ♖f3 f6 35. c4 35. ♖c1! was stronger.

35... ♗e7 36. ♖e3 f5 37. ♗h4 ♖e8 38. ♖e1 ♗d7 39. ♖g2 ♖e6 40. ♖f3 ♗c6?

40... ♖h8 41. ♖g3 ♖f6 and Black shall hold on.

41. ♖d1 ♗e7 42. ♗g2 ♖h8 43. h4 ♗g6 44. ♖h1 ♗e5+ 45. ♖xe5 ♖xe5 46. ♖d1! ♗f6 47. ♗f4 ♖g8 48. h5 ♗e4 49. ♗g6+ ♖f6 50. ♖f4 ♗c5 51. ♖d6+ ♗e6+ 52. ♖e3 ♖f7

52... ♖d8 53. c5 ♖f7 54. ♗f4 is to no avail either

53. ♖d7+ ♖f6 54. ♖xb7 ♖g5 55. ♖xa7 f4+ 56. ♖f3 ♗d4+ 57. ♖e4 ♗c6 58. ♖f7 ♖e8+ 59. ♖d5 ♗b4+ 60. ♖c5 ♗d3+ 61. ♖d4 1-0

□ Sergei Movsesian

■ Mladen Palac

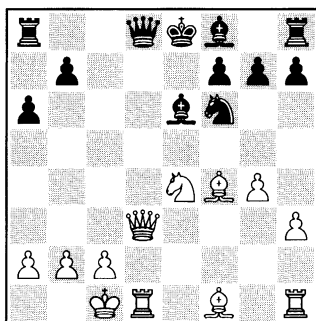
Croatia tt 1999

1. e4 c5 2. ♗c3 d6 3. ♗f3 ♗f6 4. d4 cxd4 5. ♗xd4 ♗c6 6. h3 e6

One of the main lines against 6. h3. Black is

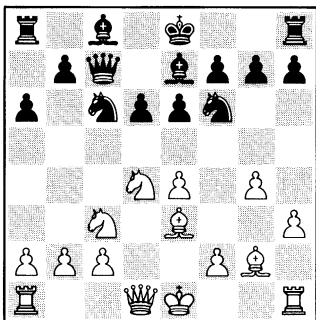
going to develop his pieces in a 'classical' way. White gets an advanced fianchetto and an extra tempo for a kingside attack, but Black's position remains very solid.

Instead of 6...e6 Black can also play 6...a6. After 7.g4 a position is reached – via a different move order – from my game against Ftacnik: 7... ♗xd4 8. ♖xd4 e5 9. ♖d3 ♖e6 10. f4 exf4 11. ♖xf4 d5 12. 0-0 dxe4 13. ♗xe4



13... ♗d5? (13... ♖xd3 was obligatory here: 14. ♗xf6+ gxf6 15. ♖xd3 0-0-0 16. ♖e4 ♖xd1+ 17. ♖xd1 h5 18. ♖d3 and Black must now find the only move 18...b5! 19. ♖c3+ ♖c4 with unclear play) 14. ♖b3! ♖d7 15. ♖c4 0-0-0 16. ♖d3 and Black found himself completely pinned in Movsesian-Ftacnik, Czech tt 1997/98.

7. g4 a6 8. ♖g2 ♖c7 9. ♖e3 ♖e7



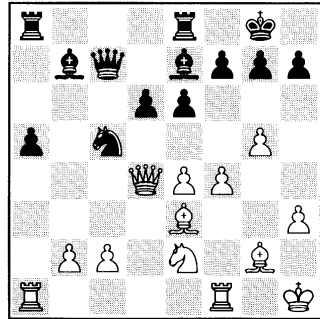
**10.f4 ♘d7 11.g5 b5**

Another option is 11...0-0 12.h4 b5 13.0-0  
 ♖xd4 14.♙xd4 b4 15.♗e2 ♖e8 16.f5?!  
 (probably the more patient 16.♗g3!? would  
 be a better idea here) 16...♗e5 17.♗f4 a5  
 18.g6? (this just blunders Black's only  
 defence after a piece sacrifice) 18...hxg6  
 19.♙xe5 dxe5 20.♗xg6 fxg6 21.fxg6  
 ♖c5+ 22.♔h2 ♗e3-+ Manik-Solak,  
 Batumi 1999.

**12.0-0 ♙b7 13.♔h1 0-0 14.♗ce2**

This plan turns out to be too slow, Black is in  
 time to create sufficient play at the queenside.  
 The typical 14.a3 was preferable.

**14...♖fe8 15.a4 bxa4 16.♖xa4 ♗c5**  
**17.♖a1 ♗xd4 18.♖xd4 a5!**

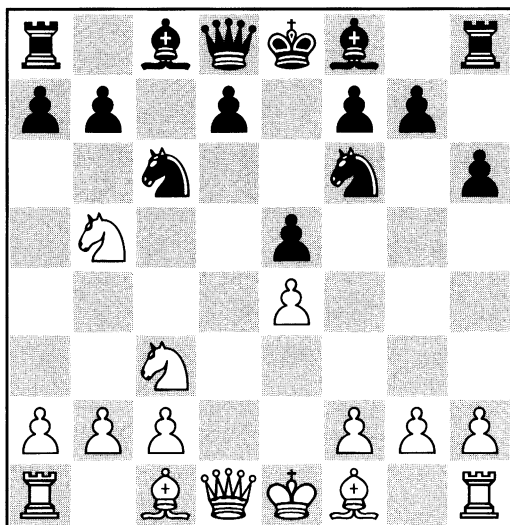


**19.♗g3 ♙f8 20.♖c3 ♖ec8 21.♙d4**  
**♗d7 22.♖e3 g6 23.♖f2 e5 24.♙c3**  
**exf4 25.♖xf4 ♗e5 26.♖af1 ♙a6**  
**27.♖1f2 ♙c4 28.♙d4 a4 29.♔h2 ½-½**

# CHAPTER 10

## *Dimitri Reinderman*

# The Haberditz Variation



NIC KEY SI 35.2

### Play 6...h6 in the 'Sveshnikov'

The Sveshnikov Variation gives Black active play and is theoretically sound. A lot of top players are playing it with Black, and trying to avoid it with White. The Sveshnikov rules and completely owns 1.e4. However, there is one tiny disadvantage to the Sveshnikov: there are not many sound sidelines for Black. In the Najdorf/Scheveningen you can play b5, ♟b7, ♟e7, ♖c7, ♜c6/♞d7, 0-0 in many move orders, but in the Sveshnikov there are often just one or two good moves. That makes it easier for White to prepare, since all you have to do is look at the main line. However, in a 5-minute-game on ICC, someone deviated already on move 6 against me. '6...h6? Never looked at that, but I suppose it's just

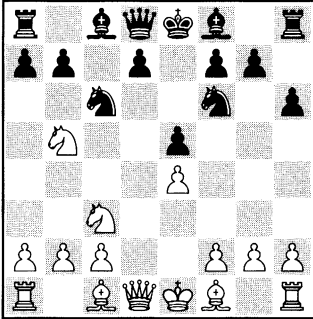
good for White' I thought, but alas, though I played normal moves, the opening was a success for Black. So I checked my books and database to see what I had done wrong, but it turned out that I had played the theoretical recommendation. Maybe 6...h6 was not so bad after all!? I decided to keep the move in mind for a suitable occasion, which was this game in the loser's final of the play-offs of the Dutch league.

□ **Dennis de Vreugt**  
 ■ **Dimitri Reinderman**  
 Netherlands tt 2004

1.e4 c5 2.♟f3 ♜c6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♞xd4

**♟f6 5.♞c3 e5 6.♞db5 h6**

This is sometimes called the Haberditz Variation. The point is to prevent 7...♙g5. The main disadvantage of 6...h6 is that it allows the knight check on d6. See the next game for 7.♞d6+.

**7.♞d5**

Some other tries:

– 7.♙e3 d6 8.♞d5 ♞xd5 9.exd5 ♞b8 (not 9...♞e7? 10.c3! a6 11.♖a4+-) 10.c4 a6 11.♞c3 ♙e7 12.♙d3 ♙g5 13.♗d2 ♙xe3 14.♗xe3 0-0 15.0-0 ♞d7 16.♞ac1 f5= and the players agreed a draw in Zaitsev-Gheorghiu, Sochi 1976.

– 7.♙c4 a6 (7...d6 8.♞d5 ♞xd5 9.♙xd5 is good for White) 8.♞d6+ ♙xd6 9.♗xd6 ♗e7 10.♗xe7+ ♞xe7 11.♙e3 d6 12.0-0-0 ♙e6 13.♞d5+ ♙xd5 14.exd5 b5 15.♙b3 ♞a5 16.f3 ♞hc8= Karpov-Hug, Graz 1972.

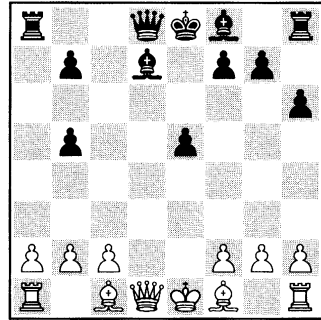
– 7.♙e2 is not so innocent. 7...d6 8.♞d5 ♞xd5 9.exd5 ♞b8 10.c4 is a little better for White. 7...a6 8.♞d6+ ♙xd6 9.♗xd6 ♗e7 has never been tried, but should be OK, since a6 is a useful move here (it prevents 10.♞b5).

**7...♞xd5 8.exd5 a6**

Compared to the normal Sveshnikov line (6...d6 7.♞d5 ♞xd5 8.exd5) we cannot say that h6 is such a useful extra move in this position – it weakens the kingside. However, not having played d6 makes the text possible!

**9.dxc6**

Here 9.♞c3 ♞d4 10.♙d3 d6 11.0-0 g6 is OK for Black.

**9...axb5 10.cxd7+ ♙xd7**

In this position Black has two weaknesses: pawn b5 and the kingside. In exchange for that, Black can develop freely and has an extra centre pawn.

**11.♙d3**

Now I had to think for myself, and there follows a series of second best moves. Fortunately the damage wasn't so bad.

**11...♙d6**

11...♙c6 followed by 12...♗d5 is better, when Black is close to equality. For example, 11...♙c6 12.0-0 ♗d5 13.♗g4 h5 14.♗h3 ♙e7 15.♙e3 ♙d7 16.♙f5 ♙xf5 17.♗xf5 g6 18.♗d3 ½-½, Vitolinsh-Lutikov, Soviet Union 1970.

**12.0-0 b4**

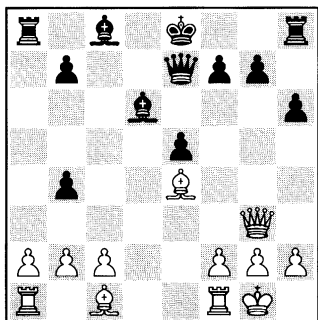
After 12...0-0 13.♗e2 with the double threat 14.♙xb5 and 14.♗e4 is annoying. But 12...♗c7 still keeps everything together.

**13.♙e4 ♙c8**

I didn't like the position after 13...♙c6 14.♙xc6+ bxc6 15.♗g4 ♗f6 16.♗e4 (or 16.♗c4). After 16...0-0 17.♗xc6 ♞fc8 18.♗e4 ♗g6 19.♗xg6 fxc6 20.♞d1 ♙e7 21.c3 White has some winning chances in the endgame.

**14.♗f3 ♗e7 15.♗g3**





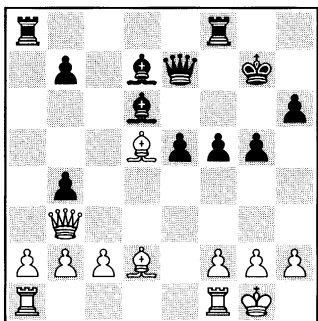
### 15...g5!?

I calculated 15...g6 16.f4 exf4 17.♙xf4 ♙xf4 18.♞xf4 0-0 19.♙xg6 fxg6 20.♚xg6+ ♚g7 21.♞xf8+ ♜xf8 22.♞f1+ ♜g8 23.♚e8+ ♜h7 24.♞f7+— here and wasn't very happy. 15...f5 and 15...♜f8 are bad also, so after a process of deduction and elimination I got to 15...g5, which had the bonus of reducing my fear for the move f4. There is a fourth alternative in 15...♚f6 but after 16.f4 exf4 17.♙xf4 ♙xf4 18.♚xf4 ♚b6+ 19.♚f2 ♚xf2+ 20.♞xf2 White is better.

### 16.♚f3 0-0 17.♙d2

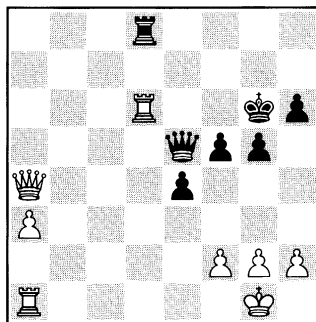
White must be better here, but 17.♚h5 ♜g7 18.h4 f5 19.♙d3 e4 20.hxg5 exd3 21.♚xh6+ ♜g8 22.♚g6+ ♜h8 is only a draw. 17.♙f5 is another logical move, when I wanted to play 17...♜g7 and 18...♚f6. Maybe 17.g4!? is best.

### 17...f5 18.♙d5+ ♜g7 19.♚b3 ♙d7



Now the position is about equal.

20.a4 bxa3ep 21.bxa3 ♙a4 22.♚b2 ♞ac8 23.c4 b5! 24.♞fc1 bxc4 25.♙xc4 ♚b8 26.♚c3 ♜g6 27.♙d5 e4 28.♚a5 ♚b5 29.♚xa4 ♞xd5 30.♙b4 ♚e5 31.♙xd6 ♞xd6 32.♞d1 ♚fd8 33.♞xd6



### 33... ♞xd6

Something very strange happened here. I had considered 32...♞d3 instead of 32...♞fd8, and the image of the rook on a hanging stayed in my mind. When Dennis took on d6, I thought he had blundered. I did a short check that I was really winning and took the rook on a1. The Fide rules don't allow this move though, since I was in check, as Dennis pointed out. Oops. So, I put the queen and rook back, and took on d6 with the rook, thinking about whether the extra moves would cause trouble with the digital clock, which keeps score of the amount of moves made. In the meantime Nijboer and Timmerman on the board next to me were laughing their heads off about my illegal move(s). That's plural yes: I had totally forgotten about the touch-and-move rule, and so had Dennis. Fortunately it doesn't make a big difference, after 33...♚xd6 chances are still about equal.

34.♞d1 ♞xd1+ 35.♚xd1 e3 36.fxe3 ♚xe3+ 37.♜f1 ♚xa3

OK, now Black is even better. I could vaguely remember having read that 3 versus 2 on a wing in a queen endgame gives serious winning chances to the side with a pawn up. Maybe my memory is wrong though, I have no idea how Black should try to win it. It showed, as Dennis had no trouble making a draw.

38.♖d5 ♖a6+ 39.♔f2 ♖a7+ 40.♔f1 ♖f7 41.♖c6+ ♔h7 42.♖d6 h5 43.♖d8 g4 44.♖g5 f4 45.♔f2 ♖a7+ 46.♔f1 ♖a1+ 47.♔f2 ♖b2+ 48.♔f1 ♖c1+ 49.♔f2 ♖e3+

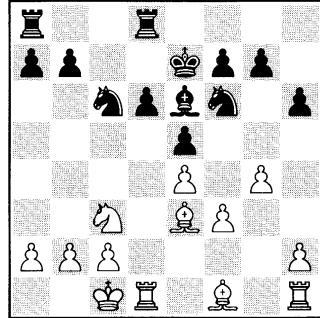
Draw.

□ Aarne Saastamoinen

■ Jyrki Salonen

Tampere 1998

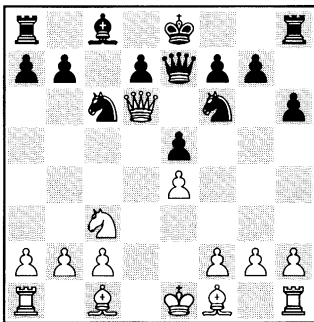
14.h4 ♖e8 15.♖h2 a6 16.g5 hxg5 17.hxg5 b5 18.♖b6 ♖d7 19.♔d5+ ♖xd5 20.exd5 ♖b7 21.♖e3 ♔b8 22.f4 ♔d7 23.♖h3 ♖c4 24.♖e2 with a clear advantage for White in Stein-Miagmasuren, Soussé 1967. However, things are not that bleak. Let us go back to the position after 12...♖hd8 13.g4 ♖ac8



1.e4 c5 2.♔f3 ♔c6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♔xd4 ♔f6 5.♔c3 e5 6.♔db5 h6 7.♔d6+

This natural check is the main line.

7...♖xd6 8.♖xd6 ♖e7



### 9.♔b5

More logical than 9.♖xe7+, though that move has been played more. After 9...♔xe7 10.♖e3 (10.b3 d6 11.♖a3 ♖d8 12.0-0-0 a6 13.♔d5+ ♔xd5 14.exd5 ♔b8 15.c4 with a tiny advantage for White) 10...d6 11.0-0-0 ♖e6 12.f3 White has scored very well in practice, for example 12...♖hd8 13.g4 ♖ac8

Instead of Miagmasuren's 13...♖ac8 Black can play 13...d5!, since after 14.♖c5+ ♔e8 15.♔b5 ♖ac8! 16.♔d6+ ♖xd6 17.♖xd6 dxe4 Black gets two pawns for the exchange. However, see the postscript below.

### 9...♖b8!

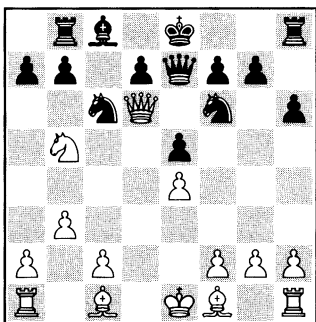
This was a new move, also played by my opponent on ICC. Previously, Black took on d6, but after 9...♖xd6 10.♔xd6+ ♔e7 11.♔f5+ ♔f8 12.b3! White is better according to theory. There are two main roads now:

- 12...d5 13.♖a3+ ♔g8 14.exd5 ♔xd5 15.♔d6 ♖b8 16.♖c4 ♖e6 17.0-0-0 with a pleasant game for White in Spassky-Gheorghiu, Bath 1973, and
- 12...♔xe4 13.♖a3+ ♔g8 14.♔d6 ♔xd6 15.♖xd6 'and Black can hardly move'.

Actually, concerning the second line, I am not sure if theory is right here: after all Black has an extra centre pawn, and I can't find anything convincing for White if Black just develops. Still, 9...♖b8 is safer.

### 10.b3

Otherwise the knight has to go back to c3.



10... ♖xe4 11. ♜xe7+ ♙xe7 12. ♙a3+ d6 13.f3

Or 13.0-0-0 ♜d8 14.f3 a6 15.fxex4 axb5 16. ♙xb5 ♜a8 17. ♗b2 ♘d4=.

13... a6!

Again this intermediate move is necessary and good.

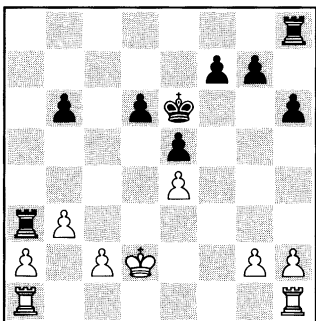
14.fxe4 axb5 15. ♙xb5 ♜a8 16. ♙xc6

Better is 16. ♙b2, but Black is equal after 16...f5 or 16...♗b4!?

16... ♜xa3

After 16...bxc6 Black is also a little better.

17. ♙d5 b6 18. ♗d2 ♙e6 19. ♙xe6 ♗xe6



Black can be very happy with the outcome of the opening. The rest of the game is not important from a theoretical point of view. Black outplays his opponent to obtain a winning rook ending, only to spoil it in the end when White succeeds in (barely) saving his skin. 20. ♗c3 g6 21.g4 f6 22. ♜hd1 h5 23.gxh5 ♜xh5 24. ♜d2 ♜a7 25.a4 ♜h4 26. ♙e1 ♜ah7 27. ♙ed1 ♜d7 28. ♜g1 g5 29. ♙e1 d5 30.exd5+ ♜xd5 31. ♜xd5 ♗xd5 32. ♜f1 ♗e6 33.b4 f5 34. ♜a1 ♗d5 35.a5 ♜h3+ 36. ♗b2 bxa5 37. ♜xa5+ ♗d4 38.b5 ♜xh2 39.b6 ♜h7 40. ♜a7 ♜h6 41.b7 ♜b6+ 42. ♗c1 ♗c4 43. ♜a5 ♜xb7 44. ♜xe5 ♜f7 45. ♗d2 g4 46. ♗e3 f4+ 47. ♗f2 ♗d4 48. ♜g5 g3+ 49. ♗f3 1/2-1/2

So is 6...h6 a sound move or mainly good for its surprise value? It seems to me that it's better than theory gives it credit for. So if you like to play the Sveshnikov with Black, but want to avoid your opponent's preparation, or if you like to get an ending straight from the opening, try it!

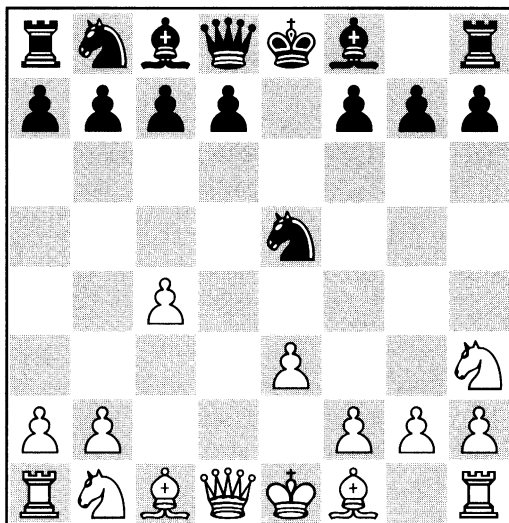
### Postscript by the author

After writing this article, I played a lot of blitzgames with this variation on ICC. It seems that White can improve on Stein's play against Miagmasuren: 6...h6 7. ♘d6+ ♙xd6 8. ♜xd6 ♗e7 9. ♜xe7+ ♗xe7 10. ♙e3 d6 11.0-0-0 ♙e6 12.f3 ♜hd8 and now, instead of Stein's 13.g4, White obtains an advantage with 13. ♗b1 followed by 14. ♘d5+. Alas, I don't see a good way to avoid this as Black.

## CHAPTER 11

*Jeroen Bosch*

# Get the Edge on the Budapest



NIC KEY VO 17.1

Play 5. ♖h3!?

The Budapest Gambit is an attempt on Black's part to solve his opening problems by radical means. Budapest players prefer dynamic piece play over patient manoeuvring to solve the positional demands of the position. Our SOS recipe is to move a knight to the edge of the board. Budapest players will be surprised at not encountering one of the main lines (4. ♖f3 or 4. ♗f4) for which they are so well prepared. More importantly, we will see that this line promises White a stable opening edge.

**1.d4 ♗f6 2.c4 e5 3.de5 ♗g4 4.e3**

This blocks the c1 bishop, and forces the knight to take back the gambit pawn. However, for White's dark-squared bishop the

a1-h8 diagonal is most suitable.

**4... ♗e5 5. ♗h3!?**

This move may look odd at first sight, but is positionally well-founded. The knight is on its way to the excellent square f4, from where it will control the important d5 square. One may compare this to the Dutch Defence, where in many lines ♗g1-h3-f4 is an accepted manoeuvre. By the way, if you want to increase the shock effect you can also use the move order 4. ♗h3 ♗e5 5.e3.

The first three lines are divided according to where Black will develop his dark-squared bishop. In Line D we examine the prophylactic 5... ♗g6.

- A) 5...♗c5
- B) 5...♗b4
- C) 5...g6
- D) 5...♘g6

Before we investigate these main lines, I will cite a few minor alternatives.

● **5...b6 6.♗e2 ♗b7 7.0-0 a5 8.♘c3 ♘a6 9.b3 g6 10.♗b2 ♗g7 11.f4! ♘c6 12.♖d2 0-0 13.♘d5± f6 14.♗f3 ♘c5 15.♘f2 d6 16.g4!? ♖h8?! 17.g5 f5 17...fg5 18.♗g7 ♖g7 19.♖b2 ♖f7 20.♘g4→ 18.♗g7 ♖g7 19.♖c3 ♖f7 20.♘f6±** Ward-Lodhi, London 1988.

● **5...♖h4?! 6.♘f4 c6 7.♗e2 d6 8.♘c3 g5?! 9.♘h5 g4 10.♘e4 ♗e7 11.♘eg3 0-0 12.0-0 ♗e6 13.b3 ♘bd7 14.♗b2 ♖ad8 15.♖c2 ♘f6 16.♘f6 ♗f6 17.♖ad1 ♗e7 18.c5±** Rowson-Keogh, Bunratty Masters 1997.

● **5...d5?! 6.cd5 6.♖d5 6...♗h3 7.gh3 ♗b4 8.♘c3 0-0 9.♗g2 ♘bd7 10.0-0± f5 11.d6?! 11.♖b3; 11.♘e2 11...♗d6 12.♗b7 ♖b8 13.♗g2 ♘c5 14.♖e2 f4! 15.ef4 ♘ed3** Kohlweyer-Lochte, Bad Wiessee 1999.

The following two moves will usually transpose into one of the main lines:

● **5...d6** This is a good move. After **6.♘f4 g6** play transposes to line C.

● **5...♘bc6** This move has little independent significance. Black will have to develop his dark-squared bishop to either b4, c5 or g7 anyway. And after 6.♘c3 Black may even transpose to the ♘g6 line. **6.♘f4 6.♘c3 ♗b4 7.♗d2 (7.♘f4 ♗c3!?) 7...0-0 (7...d5? 8.cd5 ♗g4 Fominykh-Chigvintsev, Omsk 1996. 9.♖b3+→) 8.♘f4 ♖e8 9.♗e2 ♗f8 10.0-0 d6 11.♘fd5 ♘e7 12.f4 ♘d7 13.e4± Ubilava-Toshkov, Varna 1986. 6...♗b4** Developing the b8 knight to c6 is not so good in the ♗b4 line; 6...♗c5 and 6...g6 are the alternatives. **7.♗d2 ♗d2 8.♖d2 0-0**

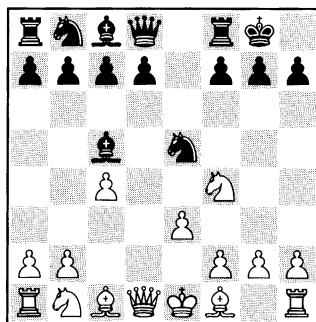
**8...d6 9.♘c3 ♗e6 10.♘fd5 a6 11.♗e2 ♖d7 12.0-0 0-0 13.f4 ♘g6 14.e4 f5 15.g4!±** Jouhki-Poranen, Vantaa 1991. **9.♗e2 d6 10.♘c3 ♗f5 11.0-0 a6** White is clearly better. He has full control of the d5 square, and there is little Black can do to prevent White's central pawns from advancing. **12.♘fd5 ♘e7 13.f4! ♘5g6 14.e4 ♗d7 15.f5 ♘d5 16.♘d5 ♘e7 17.f6!** Drasko-Bröhl, Porz 1991.

### Variation A

**5...♗c5**

Developing the bishop to c5 is, of course, standard in the main line 4.♘f3 ♗c5 5.e3 ♘bc6 6.♗e2 ♘ge5 etc. In this line the move ♗c5 makes sense: White is forced to play 5.e3, restricting his c1 bishop. Moreover, Black often gets attacking chances against the white king. In our SOS line White has already played e3 on his own accord. More importantly, White has an extra defender on the kingside – the h3 knight will go to f4 and cannot be exchanged against Black's restless 'Budapest knight'.

**6.♘f4 0-0**



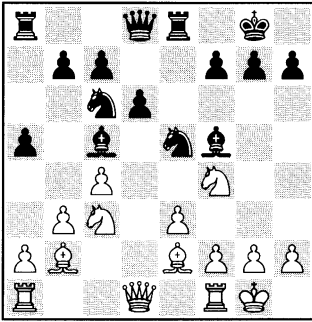
**7.♗e2**

Also good is 7.♘c3 ♖e8 8.♗e2 a5 9.b3! (deliberately postponing kingside castling) 9...♖a6 10.♗b2 ♖h6 (standard Budapest fare, but pointless with the king still on e1)

11. ♖c2 ♜bc6 12.a3 d6 13. ♔cd5 ♚g4 14.h3 ♜ce5 15.b4 ♙a7 16.ba5!? c6 17. ♜b6 ♙b6 18.ab6 ♗b6 19.0-0± Khenkin-N.Jussupov, Bad Wiessee 1998.

**7...d6 8.0-0 ♜bc6 9.♔c3 a5 10.b3 ♙f5**  
In Maksimovic-Mukic, Pula 1988, Black played: 10...♙e8 11.♙b2 ♚g6!?! After 12.♔h5 (12.♔cd5) 12...♜ce5 13.♙h1 ♗h4 14.♔d5 c6. White should now have played 15.♚g7! ♙g7 16.♔c7±. In the game 15.♔c7 ♚g4 16.h3 ♚e3! yielded Black a dangerous attack: 17.fe3 ♙e3 18.♙g4 (18.♙f3 ♙h3 19.♙e3 ♙g2 20.♙g2 ♙e3; 18.♙f3 ♙h3) 18...♙g4 19.♗g4 ♗g4 20.hg4 ♙c8±.

**11.♙b2 ♙e8**



Both sides have made sensible developing moves. Still, White's control over d5 and the fact that Black's chances on the kingside are illusory give White the better chances. This verdict has been borne out in practice. There are in fact several plans that promise White a pleasant journey to Rome.

– **12.♙h1** (White prepares a central advance with e4 and f4) 12...♚e7 13.e4 ♙d7 14.♔h5! f6 15.f4 ♚5g6 16.♗d3 ♙f8 17.♙ad1±, Borik-Blauert, Germany Bundesliga B 1987/88.

– **12.♗d2** (White decides to play on the queenside. He will prepare b4 with ♔cd5 and a3. Black's next plays right into his hands) 12...♗h4?! 13.♔cd5 ♙ac8 14.a3 ♙a7 15.♗c3 ♔d8? 16.♗a5 ♙b8 17.♗d2±,

Conquest-Schön, Germany Bundesliga 1987/88.

– **12.a3** (always a useful move) 12...♚e7?! 13.♔a4 ♚7g6 (13...♙a7 14.c5) 14.♔g6 ♚g6 15.♔c5 dc5 16.♗e1. With simple means White has achieved a superior position in the game Skembris-Anagnostopoulos, Cappelle la Grande 1995.

### Variation B

**5...♙b4**

A very popular move. Black speeds up his development. The exchange of the dark-squared bishops favours him in principle. After a subsequent d6 Black has better dark-square control than White.

**6.♙d2**

The best move. After 6.♔d2 Black can simply continue with 6...d6 or, more aggressively, with 6...d5. Inferior is 6.♔c3 ♙c3 7.bc3 d6, and Black is already better.

**6...♙d2**

It is hardly favourable to postpone the exchange:

– **6...♗e7** 7.♔f4 c6 8.♙e2±.

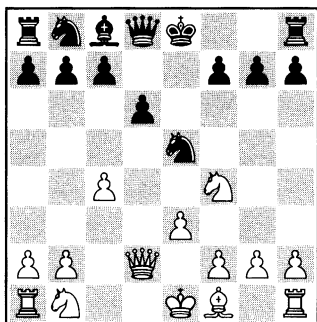
– **6...♜bc6** 7.♔f4 d6 8.♙e2 ♙f5 9.0-0 ♙d2 10.♗d2± 0-0 11.♔c3 a6 12.♙ac1 ♚g6 13.♔fd5 ♔ce5 14.e4 (again Black has no effective means to counter the advance of White's central pawns) 14...♙g4 15.f3 ♙e6 16.f4 ♙d5 17.♔d5 ♔d7 18.f5 ♚ge5 19.f6, Kaufman-Heiston, Western Mount Vernon 1998.

– **6...a5** 7.♔f4 ♔a6 8.♙e2 ♔c5 9.0-0 ♙a6 (the well-known shift of the rook to the kingside) 10.♙c3! (provoking Black into playing d6, which would render his last move pointless) 10...♙c3 11.♔c3 ♙h6 (this looks premature – 11...0-0±) 12.g3 d6 13.a3 g5? (Black is too eager to attack. 13...0-0 14.b4 ♚e6 15.♙e1±) 14.♔h5 ♗d7 15.f4! gf4 16.ef4 ♔c6 (1 6...♚g4 17.♔d5+–) 17.b4 ♚e6 (17...ab4 18.♔d5) 18.♔d5 ♙f8 19.♙g4 ♗e8 20.b5 ♚e7 21.f5+–, Lima-De Andrade, Brasilia 1998.

**7. ♖d2 d6**

The most natural reply. The violent 7...d5? simply fails to 8. ♖d5 ♖d5 9. cd5 ♖h3 10. gh3±, Kohlmeier-Hania, Ghent 1999. More interesting is 7...♗g6 8.g3!? (8.f4) 8...d6 9. ♖g2 ♗c6 (better is 9...0-0 10.0-0 a5 11. ♗c3 ♗a6) 10.0-0 ♗ce5?! 11.f4 ♗g4 (11...♗c4 12. ♖d4) 12. ♗c3 0-0 13. ♗g5 ♖b8 14. ♗f3 ♖e8 15. ♖fe1 ♗f6 16.e4 with a white edge in Malaniuk-Pastorini, Montecatini Terme 1995.

**8. ♗f4**



**8... ♗bd7**

Less good is 8...♖e6, because after 9. ♗e6 fe6 10. ♖e2 ♗bc6 11.f4± White is better. The game Khenkin-Maidla, Stockholm 1996/97, instructively continued: 11...♗d7 12. ♖h5! g6 13. ♖f3 ♗c5 14.0-0 a5 15. ♗c3 0-0 16. ♗b5 ♖f7 17. ♗d4 ♖e8 18. ♗b3!? ♗b3 19. ab3 b6 20. b4! ab4 21. ♖a8 ♖a8 22. ♖c2±.

Not very flexible is 8...♗bc6; in Atalik-Ortigala, Mar del Plata 2003, White was better after 9. ♗c3 0-0 10. ♖e2 ♖g4 11.f3 ♖e6 12. b3 ♖h4 13.g3 ♖e7 14.0-0.

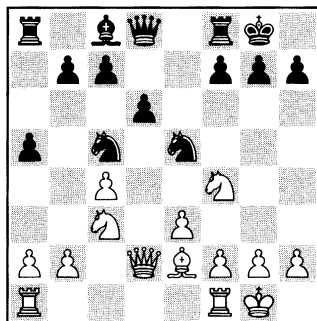
**9. ♗c3 ♗c5**

Or 9...0-0 10. ♖e2, and now:

– 10...♗c5 11.0-0 ♖f5 12.f3! h6 13.e4 ♖h7 14. b4 ♗e6 15. ♗e6 fe6 16. f4 ♗c6 17. b5 ♗e7 18. ♖ad1 ♖e8 19. c5! ♖d8 (19...dc5 20. ♖c4 wins back the pawn.) 20. cd6 ♖d6 21. ♖e3± Soffer-Mauerhofer, Bern 1991.

– 10...♗f6 11.0-0 ♖g4 12.f3 ♖e6 13. b3 ♖e8 14. ♖ad1 b6 15. ♗e6 ♖e6 16. ♖fe1 ♗ed7 17. ♖f1 ♖e8 18. g3!? ♗c5 19. ♖g2 ♖d7 20. e4 ♖ad8 21. f4 a5 22. ♖c2 ♖c8 23. ♗b5 ♗a6 24. a3 ♖g4 25. ♗d4 ♖g6 26. ♗c6 ♖c8 27. b4 ab4 28. ab4 with a white advantage in Davies-Tchakvetadze, Hamburg 1993.

**10. ♖e2 a5 11.0-0 0-0**



A typical position has arisen. White has more space and can play on the queenside or in the centre (by slowly advancing his e- and f-pawns).

**12. b3**

12. ♖ad1 ♖e8 (according to Atalik, 12...f5! is stronger, 13. b3 ♗f7 14. ♖b2 Atalik-Mohr, Podlehnik 2001) 13. ♗fd5 ♖e6 14. e4 ♖d5 15. ♖d5 ♗ed7 16. f3± Alexandrov-Pankratov, Moscow 1996.

**12... ♖f5**

White has a slight advantage here. Two examples:

– 13.f3 f6 14. ♖ad1 ♖e8 15. ♖fe1 ♗f7 16. ♖f1 c6 17. e4 ♖e6 18. ♖f2± Skembris-Mohr, Portoroz 1993.

– 13. ♖ad1 ♗h8 14. f3 b6 15. e4 ♗d7 16. ♗fd5 f5 (16...f6) 17. f4 ♗g6 18. ef5 ♖f5 19. g3 ♖a7!? 20. ♖f3± Lev-Porper, Tel Aviv 1991.

**Variation C**

**5...g6**

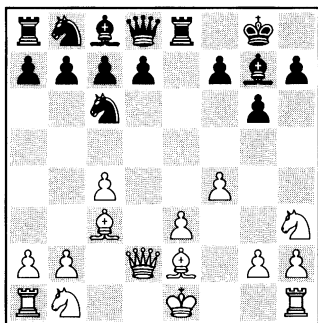
A healthy move. It is Lalic's main recommendation in his *The Budapest Gambit*

(1998). However, 5...d6 6.♟f4 g6 may actually be a more accurate move order. Black prevents 5...g6 6.f4!? in this way. Our main game actually arose via the 5...d6 move order.

**6.♟f4**

The customary follow-up to 5.♟h3. However, there is an alternative plan at this stage: 6.f4!? In connection with White's next an interesting way of exchanging the dark-squared bishops. 6...♟e6 (after 6...♟b4 7.♟d2 White achieves his aim) 7.♟d2. The point of 6.f4. Now that the diagonal a1-h8 is vacated, White can oppose Black's fianchetto bishop. The main disadvantage of White's set-up is time.

- 7...d6 8.♟c3 is a good intermediate move.
- 7...♟g7 is natural, but allows White to execute his plan. 8.♟c3 0-0 (8...♟c3 9.♟c3 merely helps White to develop) 9.♟e2 ♖e8 (9...♟h4 10.♟f2 ♖e8 11.♟g7 ♟g7 12.♟c3 ♟a6 13.♟d2 ♟c5 14.0-0 is another plausible sample line. White has a pleasant edge) 10.♟d2



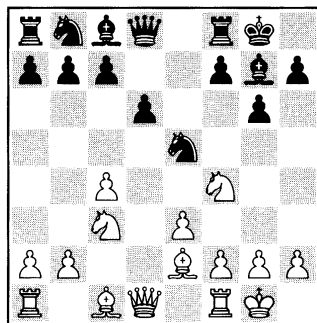
Attacking e3 with 10...♟e7?! is dubious because of 11.♟g7 ♟g7 12.♟c3± ♟e3? 13.♟e3 ♖e3 14.♟d5+- . So, Black should settle for 10...d6 11.♟f2 ♟d7 12.♟g7 ♟g7 13.♟c3±.

- 7...♟c5!?! (aiming at the e3 weakness, but what is that pawn doing on g6 now?) 8.♟c3 d5? (violent, but Black is unable to justify this

in the game) 9.♟d5 (9.cd5 ♟h3 10.dc6 ♟c8 11.♟e4±) 9...♟h3 10.gh3 ♟h4 11.♟e2 ♟a6 12.♟e1 ♟h5 13.♟f2 ♟d1 14.♟d1 0-0-0 15.a3 ♟e7 16.b4 ♟d5 17.cd5±, Bianchi-Mailliez, Paris 2000.

So, in conclusion, if Black uses the 5...g6 move order, then 6.f4 is a very interesting alternative to the more common 6.♟f4.

**6...♟g7 7.♟e2 0-0 8.0-0 d6 9.♟c3**



This position has occurred quite often in practice.

**9...♟bd7**

Less good is 9...♟e6?! 10.♟e6 fe6 11.f4 ♟ed7 12.♟e4 a5 13.♟g4 ♖e8 14.♟f3 ♟c8 15.♟h3 ♟f8 16.♟b1 ♟bd7 17.♟d2 ♟f6 18.♟f6 ♟f6 19.e4± Romanov-Biehl, Schwäbisch Gmünd 2003.

Now White should postpone e3-e4 until a more appropriate moment:

**10.e4 ♟c5 11.♟e3 c6 12.♟d2 ♟e6 13.♟ac1 ♟f4 14.♟f4 ♟e6 15.b3 ♟a5 16.♟h6 ♟h6 17.♟h6 f5**

With equality in Malaniuk-Sune Berg Hansen, Lyngby 1991.

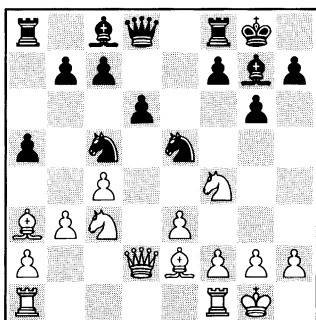
Instead, there are two possible queen moves.

- C1) 10.♟d2
- C2) 10.♟c2

**Variation C1**

**10.♟d2 a5 11.b3 ♟c4 12.♟a3**





**12...♙d7**

Stronger than 12...b6 13.♞ad1 ♖h8 14.♟fd5 f5 15.f3 g5? 16.f4! ♟f7 17.fg5 ♟g5 18.♙b2 ♙e5? (18...♙d7) 19.♞b5! ♟ce6 20.♙e5 de5 21.♞b2+— Khenkin-Marchand, Bratto 2002.

**13.♞ad1 b6**

Here Black should seriously consider 13...a4 14.b4 ♟e6 15.♟fd5 f5 16.f4 ♟f7 17.c5 dc5 18.bc5 ♙c6♞ Martinez Martin-Del Rio Angelis, Dos Hermanas 2002.

After the text the game is pretty unclear, but Black is not worse.

**14.♞c1 ♞e8 15.♟fd5 f5 16.♞b5 c6 17.♟d6 cd5 18.♙e8 ♞e8 19.♙c5 bc5 20.cd5∞ ♙b5 21.♞fe1 ♞c8 22.♙c4? ♙c4 23.bc4 ♞a4!♞**

Zaiats-Gurieli, Kuala Lumpur Interzonal 1990.

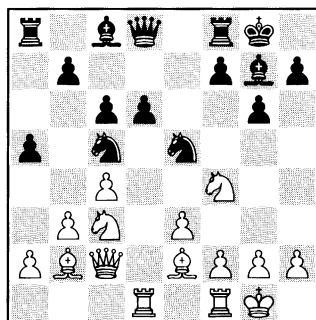
**Variation C2**

**10.♞c2 a5 11.b3**

Stronger than the passive 11.♙d2 ♟c5 12.♞ad1 f5 13.♟a4?! (13.b3 planning 14.a3 and b4 is stronger, as Lalic has indicated. The position is about equal) 13...b6 14.♙c3 (White has deliberately provoked b6 to prevent Black taking away the d5 square with c6 – which would now be too loosening. However, there is nothing wrong with the a5-b6-c7-d6 structure. White, clearly the stronger player, had no advantage and lost in the end) 14...♙b7 15.♟cd5 ♞f7 16.♙c1 ♞h4 17.b3

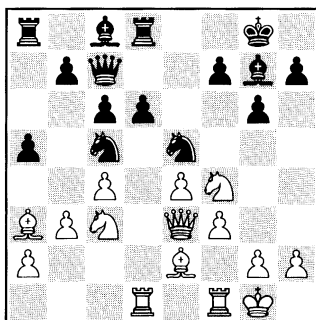
♞e8 18.♙b2 ♙c8 19.f3 g5! 20.♟d3 ♟cd3 21.♙d3 f4! with an attack, M. Gurevich-Tisdall, Akureyi 1988.

**11...♟c5 12.♙b2 c6 13.♞ad1**



A typical King's Indian position, albeit with a pawn on e3! White's space advantage guarantees him a slight edge.

**13...♞c7 13...♞e7. 14.♞d2 ♞d8 15.e4 ♞b6 16.♙a3 ♙g4 17.♞e3 ♞c7?! Better 17...♙e2 18.♟fe2±. 18.f3! 18.♙c5 dc5 19.♞c5 ♙f8 20.♞e3. 18...♙c8 18...♙d7; 18...♙e6 19.♟e6 ♟e6 (19...fe6 20.f4 ♟f7 21.e5) 20.f4±.**



**19.♟cd5! cd5 Or 19...♞b8 20.♞b6+-. 20.♟d5 ♞b8 20...♞d7 21.♞b6 ♞c6 22.♙c5+-. 21.♙c5 dc5 22.♟e7 ♟f8 23.♞d8 ♟e7 24.♞g8 and White was winning, Agrest-Budnikov, Katowice 1992.**

**Variation D**

**5...♟g6**

Prophylaxis. Black takes away the f4 square from the h3-knight – hoping to glue it to the edge of the board. White has some creative replies at his disposal. In the first line we will encounter an early ♖h5. In line D2 White gets a safe edge by fianchettoing his f1 bishop.

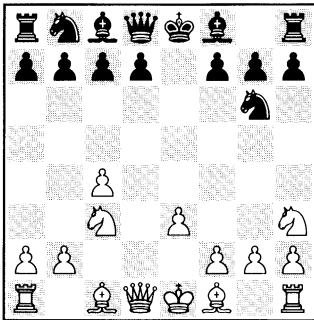
D1) 6.♟c3

D2) 6.g3

**Variation D1**

**6.♟c3**

Also playable is the immediate 6.♖h5!? (preparing ♟g5, covering h3 – this becomes relevant after Black plays d6 – and preventing ♟c5) 6...♟c6 (6...♟b4 7.♟d2?! – 7.♟d2 ♟d2 (7...♟c6) 8.♟d2 ♖f6 9.0-0-0 – 7...♖f6! 8.♖b1 d6 9.a3 ♖f5, and Black is fine, P. Meister-Bartsch, Germany Bundesliga B 1994/95) 7.♟c3 ♟b4 8.♟d2 d6 9.♟e2 ♖f6 (aiming to exchange queens with ♖f5; 9...a5 10.0-0 ♟ce5 11.f4 ♟d7 12.♟f2 ♟f6 13.♖g5 0-0, Marin-De la Villa Garcia, Szirak Interzonal 1987 was also satisfactory for Black in the stem game) 10.a3 ♟a5 11.b4 ♟b6 12.0-0 ♖f5 13.♖f5 ♟f5, with equality.



**6...♟c5**

– 6...d6 7.♖h5 (even here!) 7...♟d7

8.♟f4!? ♟f4 9.ef4 ♟e7 10.♟d3 ♟c5 11.♟c2 ♟e6 12.♖e2 0-0 13.0-0 ♟f6 14.f5 ♟c3 15.fe6 ♟f6 16.ef7± Sagalchik-Furdzik, New York 1997.

– 6...♟b4 7.♟d2 d6 8.♟g1!? (8.g3 is sensible and leads to positions examined below) 8...♟c6 9.♟f3 0-0 10.a3 ♟c3 (10...♟a5 11.b4 ♟b6 12.♟d5) 11.♟c3 a5 12.b3 a4 13.b4 ♟e6 14.♟e2 ♟h4 15.♟h4 ♖h4 16.♖c1 ♖fd8 17.0-0± Bischoff-Pirrot, St Ingbert 1998.

– 6...♟c6 7.♖h5 transposes to the comments concerning 6.♖h5.

**7.♖h5! d6 8.♟g5!**

Much more energetic than 8.♟d2 ♟d7 9.♖g5 ♟f6 10.♟f4 h6 11.♖g3 ♟f4 12.♖f4 0-0 13.♟d5 ♟g4 14.h3 ♟e5 15.b4 ♟b6 16.♟c3 ♟e6 17.♟e2 ♟d5 18.cd5 a5!± Ionescu-Anagnostopoulos, Badalona 1995.

**8...♟d7 9.♟ge4 0-0 10.♟e2 ♟f6 11.♟f6 ♖f6 12.♟d5±**

The knight swap has done nothing to relieve Black's plight.

**12...♖d8 13.b4 ♟b6 14.♟b2 c6 15.♟b6 ♖b6 16.♟c3 ♟e6 17.c5! ♖d8**

White is also better after 17...dc5 18.bc5 ♖c7 19.0-0.

**18.0-0 d5 19.f4! f5 20.♟d3 ♖f7 21.♟d4±**

Drasko-Chatalbashev, Cacak 1991.

**Variation D2**

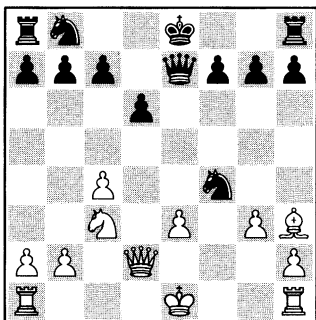
**6.g3**

Apart from preparing to fianchetto the bishop, White protects h3 with a piece and takes away the h4 square from Black's queen and knight. In practice White has done very well with 6.g3.

**6...♟c6**

Or 6...♟b4 7.♟d2 ♟d2 8.♖d2 d6 9.f4 (after the exchange of the dark-squared bishops it has become even more important to put pawns on dark squares) 9...♖e7?! 10.♟c3 ♟h3? (this looks like a clever tactic but is in

fact a blunder. Nikolaidis has seen one move further) 11. ♖h3 ♘f4 (since 12.gf4 loses to 12... ♗h4 Black must have thought he was winning a vital pawn?)



12. ♖c8! (this amusing double attack decides the game) 12... ♘c6 13. ♖b7 ♘a5 14. ♖a8 ♘c4 15. ♗d4 ♘e3 16. ♗d2 1-0 Nikolaidis-A.Ivanov, St Petersburg 1993.

**7. ♖g2 ♖b4**

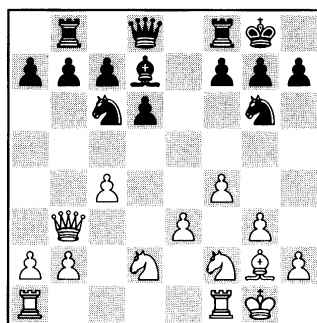
In Almeida-Fuentes, Havana 1999, Black played the creative 7... ♘ce5 8. ♗b3 ♗f6 9.f4 ♖b4, but White kept his opening advantage with 10. ♖d2 ♖d2 11. ♘d2 ♘c6 12.0-0 0-0 13. ♘e4 ♗f5 14. ♘hf2 d6?! 15. ♖h3 (greedy

but it works) 15... ♗a5 16. ♖c8 ♗fc8 17. ♗b7±.

**8. ♖d2 ♖d2**

Or 8...0-0 9. ♖b4 ♘b4 10. ♘c3 d6 11.0-0 ♖e6 12.b3 ♗c8 13. ♘g5 ♖g4 14.f3 h6 15. ♘ge4 ♖h3 16. ♗d2 ♖g2 17. ♗g2 ♗e8 (17...f5 was better) 18. ♗ad1 ♘c6 19. ♘f2 ♘ce7 20.e4± Drasko-Marchand, Montecatini Terme 1997.

**9. ♘d2 d6 10.0-0 0-0 11. ♗b3 ♗b8 12.f4 ♖d7 13. ♘f2±**



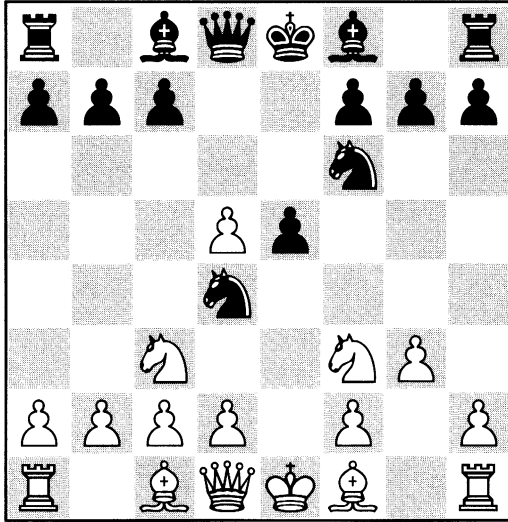
**13... ♗e8 14. ♗fe1 b6 15. ♗c3 a5 16. ♘f3 ♘f8 17.b3**

White has more space, Shulman-Getz, Philadelphia 2002.

## CHAPTER 12

*Igor Glek*

# Gambit Lines in the Glek Variation



NIC KEY SO 1.6

### Is this the Belgrade Gambit?

The Glek Variation of the Four Knights Opening has become an acceptable way of playing for a slight edge with White. It may not be the Ruy Lopez, but as Black it can be tough to play against a well-prepared opponent. In this chapter the main protagonist of 4.g3 attacks his own line with two gambit continuations: 4... $\text{cxe4!}$ ? and 4...d5 5.exd5  $\text{cxd4!}$ ?. Both lines aim to demonstrate that the extra tempo (4.g3) is detrimental to White's position.

Let us take a brief look at the rather silly line: 1.e4 e5 2.f3 c6 3.c3 f6 4.g3e5?!. White sacrifices a piece to obtain a mighty pawn centre after 4... $\text{cxe5}$  5.d4. However,

after Black's strongest move 5...g6, he will not obtain sufficient compensation. I don't want to claim a White edge after 5...c6 6.d5 – but, at least, it's a game. It is obvious from these comments that 4.g3 can be regarded as some sort of weakness after 4... $\text{cxe4!}$ ? (perhaps still somewhat dubious, but by no means as silly as 4.cxe5).

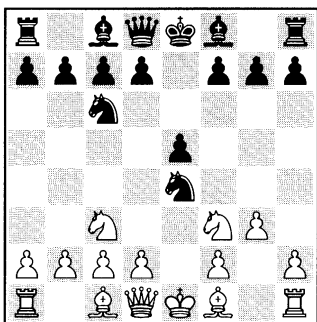
While the Belgrade Gambit – 1.e4 e5 2.f3 c6 3.c3 f6 4.d4 exd4 5.d5 – is clearly not so dubious, it also does not represent White's best bet for an opening advantage in the Four Knights. Yet, after the inclusion of 4.g3 (and with reversed colours) we will see that it suddenly becomes an excellent surpris-

se weapon for Black against the Glek Variation!

We will treat the piece sacrifice  $4... \text{♟}xe4$  as a 'light appetizer', while the tactical complications of  $4...d5$   $5.exd5$   $\text{♟}d4$  will be our 'main course'.

### Appetizer

**1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♟c6 3.♟c3 ♟f6 4.g3 ♟xe4!?**



However, you might feel about this piece sacrifice, don't condemn it outright. No less a player than Macieja has dared it – against Smirin in 2004. Before we investigate the piece sacrifice, it is perhaps useful to draw one more SOS parallel. In the first volume of *Secrets of Opening Surprises* the intriguing Gunsberg Variation ( $4.a3!?$ ) was investigated on page 19. After one of Black's main continuations,  $4...g6$ , Magnus Carlsen has played  $5.\text{♟}xe5$   $\text{♟}xe5$   $6.d4$   $\text{♟}c6$   $7.d5$  (and now  $7... \text{♟}b4$  is obviously not on, see the main line in the text) Carlsen-Nyusti, Helsinki 2002.

**5.♟xe4 d5 6.♟c3**

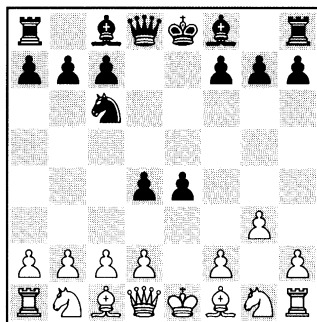
The only retreat square, since White's fourth has taken away the g3 square. No good is  $6.\text{♟}eg5$  after either  $6...h6$  or  $6...e4$ .

**6...d4 7.♟b5!?**

The most enterprising continuation. If White does not want to refute  $4... \text{♟}xe4$  he can opt

for:  $7.\text{♟}g2$   $dx c3$   $8.bxc3$  which leads by way of an amusing transposition to the line  $4...d5$   $5.exd5$   $\text{♟}xd5$   $6.\text{♟}g2$   $\text{♟}xc3$   $7.bxc3$ . This was how Magnus Carlsen, who had prepared the piece sacrifice especially for this game, was outfoxed by and lost to Elena Sedina, St Vincent 2003.

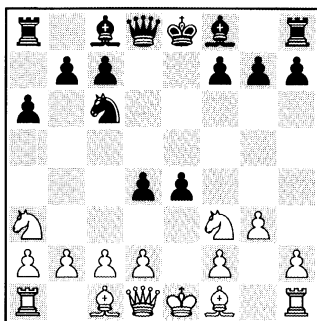
Much more passive is  $7.\text{♟}b1?$   $e4$   $8.\text{♟}g1$ .



Nevertheless, Black has only one pawn for his knight.

Serious attention deserves  $7.\text{♟}e4$  considering that it was Smirin's choice when faced with the piece sacrifice. After  $7...f5$   $8.\text{♟}eg5$   $e4$   $9.\text{♟}c4$   $exf3$   $10.\text{♟}xf3$  ( $10.\text{♟}f7+$   $\text{♟}d7$   $11.\text{♟}e6+$   $\text{♟}e8$ ;  $10.\text{♟}f7$   $\text{♟}e7+$   $11.\text{♟}f1$   $\text{♟}e5$ )  $10... \text{♟}e7+$   $11.\text{♟}f1$   $\text{♟}e6$   $12.d3$   $\text{♟}xc4$   $13.dxc4$   $\text{♟}d7$   $14.\text{♟}g2$  0-0-0 play was about equal in Smirin-Macieja, Czech tt 2003/04.

**7...a6 8.♟a3 e4**

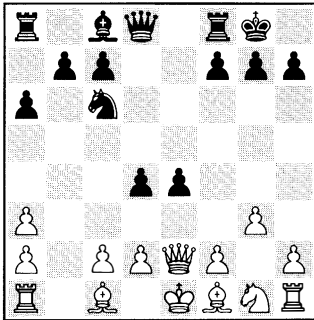


**9. ♘h4!?**

In two games White chose 9. ♖e2?! but this move is dubious against accurate play:

● 9... ♖e7 10. ♘g1 ♘e5 11. h3 d3 (11... ♘d7 12. ♘g2 ♘c6 13. d3) 12. ♖e3 ♘f5 13. cxd3 exd3 14. ♘g2 0-0-0 15. ♘f3 (an alternative is 15. g4) 15... ♘xf3+ 16. ♘xf3 ♖f6 (after 16... ♖d7 17. 0-0 White is winning) 17. ♘c4 b5 18. g4 bxc4 19. gxf5 ♘d7 20. ♖f4 ♘c5 21. ♖xc4 ♖he8+ 22. ♘f1 ♖e5 23. b4 ♖xf5 24. ♘g4 and White won in Nordahl-Hersvik, Kristiansund 2001.

● 9... ♘xa3! 10. bxa3 0-0 11. ♘g1 (or 11. ♘h4 d3 and Black is better). Clearly, Black has tremendous compensation for the piece. White's pieces are a sorry sight on the first rank.



Black crashes through with 11... d3! 12. cxd3 (after 12. ♖d1 ♘d4 13. cxd3 ♖e8 14. ♘g2 ♘c2+ 15. ♘f1 ♖xd3+ Black is winning) and now after 12... ♘d4! Black's attack should win.

In the game Al Modiahki-Hakki, Teheran Zonal 2001, there followed instead: 12... ♖d4!?, which is also not bad, though not quite as winning as 12... ♘d4. Nevertheless, let's follow the game for some more spectacular tactics: 13. ♖b1 exd3 14. ♖e3 ♖d5 15. f3 ♘f5 16. ♘f2 ♖fe8 17. ♖f4 ♖c5+

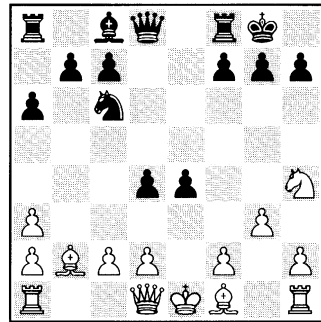
18. ♘g2 ♖e1 19. ♘h3 (Black managed to lose this winning position by means of two consecutive blunders) 19... ♖ae8? (he could have reaped the gains of his previous play by 19... ♖xc1 20. ♖xc1 ♘xh3+ 21. ♘xh3 ♖xc1) 20. ♘f2 h6? (and here 20... ♖xf2+! would still lead to an amusing draw: 21. ♘xf2 ♖8e2+ 22. ♘xe2 ♖xe2+ 23. ♘g1 ♖e1+ 24. ♘f2 ♖e2+ with perpetual check) 21. g4!+- ♘g6 22. ♘xd3 ♖le2 23. ♘xe2 ♖xe2 24. d4! ♘xd4 25. ♘e3 ♘e6 26. ♘xc5 ♘xf4+ 27. ♘g3 and White wins.

By the way, also after the retreat 9. ♘g1!? – some might argue that a piece is still a piece...

**9... ♘xa3 10. bxa3 0-0**

Also insufficient is 10... d3 11. ♘b2!

**11. ♘b2**



Personally, I don't believe in the reality of Black's attacking chances here. A piece is a high price to pay for some positional compensation.

Let's follow my analysis:

**11... ♖e8 12. ♘e2 ♘h3 13. ♘g4 ♘xg4 14. ♖xg4 ♘e5 15. ♖h3 ♘f3+ 16. ♘d1 ♖f6 17. ♖f5 ♖b6 18. ♖b1 g6 19. ♖d5**

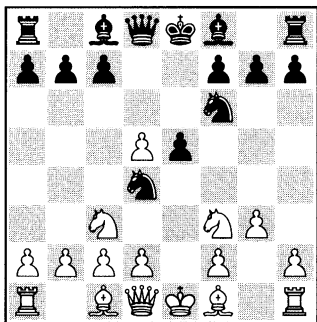
Bad is 19. ♖f4? g5 20. ♖g4 h5 21. ♖xh5 gxh4.

**19... ♖e5 20. ♖d7 ♖b5 21. ♘xf3 exf3 22. ♘c1**

and White is winning.

## Main Course

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗c3 ♗f6 4.g3 d5  
5.exd5 ♗d4!?



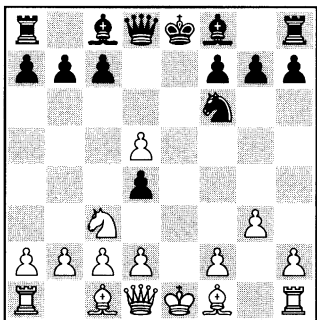
So let's play the 'Belgrade Gambit' with colours reversed and the additional move g2-g3!?. In this line Black sacrifices only a pawn...

Now White has three possibilities:

- A) 6.♗xd4
- B) 6.♗xe5
- C) 6.♕g2

## Variation A

6.♗xd4 exd4



7.♕b5+

Here the correspondence player Labahn has

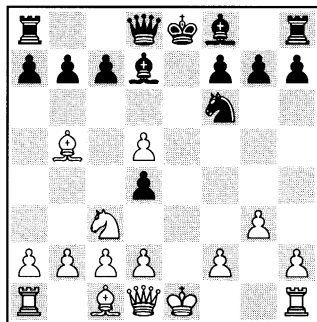
analysed 7.♗b5 ♕c5 8.♖e2+ ♗f8 9.♕g2 a6 10.b4 ♖b6 11.♗a3 ♕g4 with excellent compensation for Black. White should interpolate 7.♖e2+ ♕e7 before playing 8.♗b5, after 8...0-0 9.♕g2 ♗xd5 10.♗xd4 ♗b4 11.c3 c5 12.cxb4 cxd4 13.0-0 ♖xb4 play is equal.

7...♕d7

It is also possible to play 7...♗d7. Two samples of how play might proceed:

● 8.♗e2 a6 9.♕a4 ♕c5 10.0-0 0-0 11.♗f4 ♕d6 12.d3 ♗c5 13.♖b3 ♗xb3 14.axb3 ♕xf4 15.♕xf4 g5 (15...♕h3 16.♖e1 g5 17.♖h5) 16.♕d2 ♕h3 17.♖e1 ♖xd5 18.f3 g4 19.♖e4 f5 20.♖f4 ♖fe8 21.♖a4 c5 and Black's game is clearly preferable.

● 8.♖e2+ ♕e7 9.d6 cxd6 10.♗d5 a6 11.♕xd7+ ♕xd7 12.0-0 ♕c6 and Black is fine.



8.♖e2+

Again interpolating this check is White's most accurate option.

8...♖e7

8...♕e7 9.d6 cxd6 (9...dxc3 10.dxe7 cxd2+ 11.♕xd2 ♖xe7 12.♖xe7+ ♗xe7 13.♖b4+ ♗d8 14.0-0±) 10.♕xd7+ and here the lines fork, depending upon how Black recaptures on d7:

● 10...♗xd7 11.♗d5 ♖c8 12.0-0 ♖xc2 and now either 13.♖g4, or 13.♖e1 ♗e5 14.f4 d3 15.♖f1 ♗g6 16.♖xd3±.

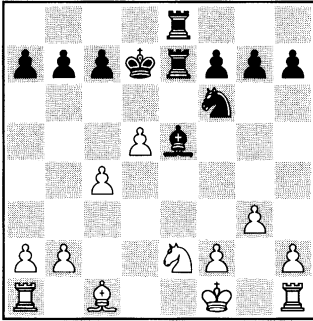
● 10...♖xd7 11.♗b5 0-0 12.0-0 d5

13.♘xd4 ♖fe8 14.♗f3 ♙c5 15.♘b3 ♙b6  
16.d4 ♗h3 17.♙d2±.

**9.♙xd7+ ♘xd7 10.♗xe7+**

But not 10.♘b5 ♗c5 11.♗d3 ♖e8+ 12.♙f1  
♘xd5.

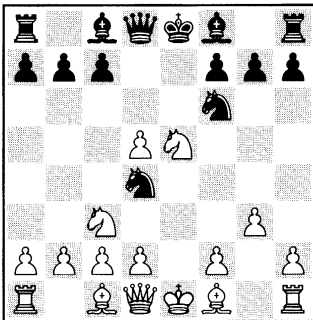
**10...♗xe7 11.♘e2 ♖he8 12.♘xd4  
♙c5+ 13.♘e2 ♖e7 14.d4 ♙xd4  
15.♙f1 ♙e5 16.c4 ♖ae8**



And Black's huge lead in development gives him excellent compensation.

### Variation B

**6.♘e5**



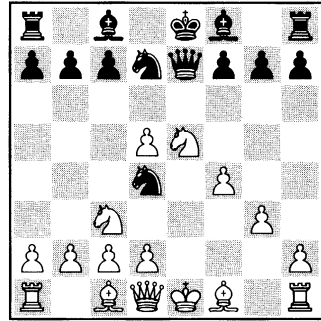
Taking the second pawn is ambitious, but very risky for White. Black can pin the knight along the e-file (B1) or simply continue his development (B2).

B1) 6...♗e7

B2) 6...♙d6

### Variation B1

**6...♗e7 7.f4 ♘d7**



Here the inclusion of 4.g3 makes the main line of the Belgrade Gambit unplayable: 7...♘g4 8.d6 ♗xd6 9.♘b5 ♗b6 10.♘xd4 ♘xe5 11.♗e2 ♗xd4 12.c3 ♙g4 13.♗xe5+ ♗xe5+ 14.fx5±. Also bad is 7...♙g4 8.♙e2±.

**8.d6**

Losing is 8.d3 f6. Black also gets the better chances after 8.♙b5 and now:

– 8...♘xb5 9.♘xb5 ♘xe5 10.fx5 a6 11.♘d4 ♗xe5+ 12.♗e2 ♗xe2+ 13.♘xe2 ♙f5 with compensation.

– or 8...c6 9.dxc6 ♘xe5 10.fx5 ♗xe5+ 11.♙e2 ♙c5 12.♖f1 0-0 13.d3 ♙g4 14.♙f4 ♗e6 15.cxb7 ♘xe2 16.♘xe2 ♖ae8 17.b8 ♗ ♗xe2+ 18.♗xe2 ♖xe2+ 19.♙d1 ♖xb8 20.♙xb8 ♖e8+ 21.♙d2 ♙e3+ 22.♙c3 ♖c8+ 23.♙b4 ♖xb8+ 24.♙c3 ♙e6 and Black is slightly better.

**8...♗xd6**

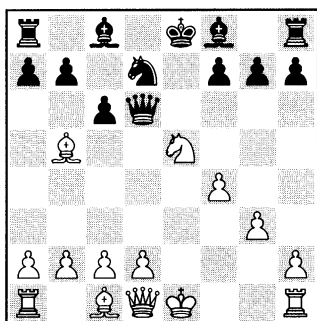
After this move play gets a rather forced character. Losing alternatives are:

– 8...♗e6? 9.♙c4.

– 8...cxd6? 9.♘d5 ♗d8 10.♘d7.

**9.♘b5 ♘xb5 10.♙xb5 c6**





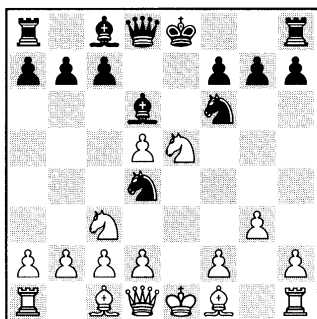
### 11.♙c4

This gives White a slight plus. Black has no problems after 11.♜xd7 ♙xd7 12.♙e2 (or 12.♚e2+ ♙e7 13.♙c4 0-0 14.0-0 ♙f6 with the initiative) 12...♙h3 13.d3 ♚e6 14.c3 0-0-0 15.♚b3 ♜d5 16.♜f2 ♙c5+ 17.d4 ♜e8 18.♙d3 ♜xd4 19.♚xe6+ ♜d7+ 20.♙e3 ♙xe6 (or 20...♜xe6 21.♙xc5 ♜xd3 22.♜ad1=) 21.♙xc5 ♜xd3 22.♜ad1 ♜xd1 23.♜xd1 b6 24.♙d4 with equality.

**11...♙xe5 12.♚e2 f6 13.fxe5** 13.d3 ♙g4 14.fxe5 ♙d4 15.c3 ♚xc4 16.dxc4 ♙xe2 17.♜xe2 fxe5. **13...♚xe5** 13..fxe5 14.d3±. **14.♚xe5+ fxe5 15.d3** 15.♜f1 ♙h3 16.♜f7 b5 17.♙b3 c5. **15...♙h3 16.♙e3** with only a very slight edge for White in the ending.

### Variation B2

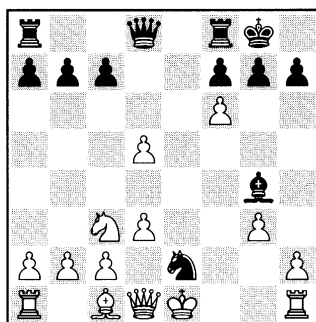
#### 6...♙d6!?



Black plays in real gambit style!

#### 7.♜c4

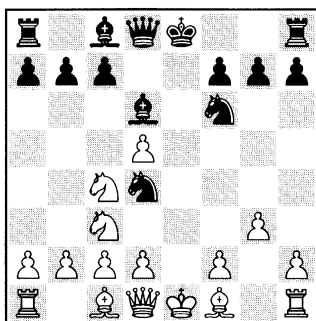
This is forced, as after 7.f4 ♙xe5 8.fxe5 ♙g4 9.♙e2 ♜xe2 (9...♙xe2 10.♜xe2 ♚xd5 11.0-0 ♚xe5 unclear) 10.exf6 0-0 11.d3 (not 11.♜xe2? ♜e8 12.0-0 ♙xe2 and Black is winning) a spectacular position arises in which Black has an attractive choice.



He may either play the simple 11...♜e8, or opt for the following forcing line:

11...♚xf6 12.♜xe2 ♜fe8 13.♜f1 ♚b6 14.♜f2 ♜xe2+ (14...♙e7 15.h3) 15.♜xe2 ♚g1+ 16.♜d2 ♚xd1+ 17.♜xd1 ♜e8, when both

– 18.h3 ♙f3 (18...♙xe2+ 19.♜d2 ♙f1) 19.c4 ♜xe2 20.♙d2 with unclear play, and  
– 18.c4 c6 19.dxc6 bxc6 with compensation, should cause him no headaches.



#### 7...♙xg3!?

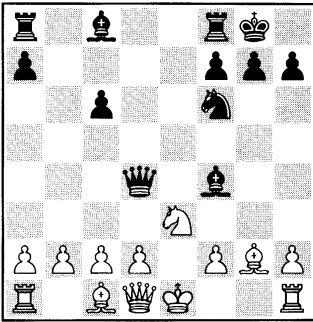
At this stage there is a serious alternative in the form of: 7...♙g4 8.♙e2 ♖e7 9.♗e3 ♗xe2 10.♗xe2 ♙f3 11.0-0 ♗xd5 12.♖e1 ♗xe3 13.fxg3 ♙g4 14.d3 when White is only slightly better.

Instead of 8...♖e7 Karsten Müller has recommended 8...♗xe2 9.♗xe2 0-0 10.0-0 ♙f3!

**8.♗e3**

Black will obtain a dangerous initiative after both: 8.fxg3 ♙g4 9.♙e2 ♗xe2 10.♗xe2 ♖xd5, and 8.hxg3 ♙g4.

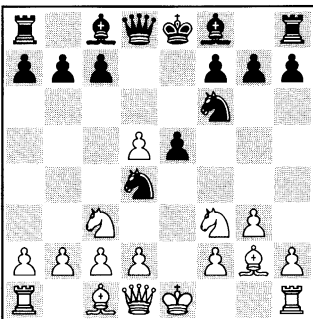
**8...♙f4 9.♗b5 c5 10.dxc6ep 0-0 11.♗xd4 ♖xd4 12.♙g2 bxc6**



This position is rather similar to certain positions in the Gambit Variation of the Two Knights Defence (5...♗a5). It seems that Black has good compensation for the pawn.

**Variation C**

**6.♙g4**



This is White's safest option.

**6...♙g4**

This pin is best, although Black has an alternative in 6...♙c5:

Perhaps this is one of the few exceptions when White should just grab the e-pawn. White is better after 7.♗xe5 0-0 8.0-0 ♖e8 9.♗f3 (but not 9.♗a4 ♙d6 10.♗c4 b5 11.♗xd6 ♖xd6 12.♗c3 b4 13.♗a4 ♙g4 14.f3 ♙d7, with initiative) 9...♙g4 10.d3 ♗xd5 11.♗xd5 ♗e2+ 12.♖h1 ♖xd5 13.♗g5 ♖e5 14.f3 ♙h5 15.♗e4 ♗xc1 16.♗xc5 ♖xc5 17.♖xc1 and has kept his small material advantage.

Still, one improvement in the above line can change the verdict. After 7.0-0 there follows 7...♙g4. If White now aims to take the pawn he is looking for trouble, e.g. 8.♖e1 0-0 9.♖xe5 (9.d3 ♗xd5 10.♖xe5 ♗xc3 11.bxc3 ♖f6 12.♙f4 ♗xf3+ 13.♙xf3 ♙d6=) 9...♖d6 10.♖e1 ♖fe8 with compensation.

As so often in this gambit variation it is better for White not to take the second pawn on e5!

Instead of 8.♖e1 White can also play the quiet 8.d3 when the lines fork:

● 8...♗xd5 9.♗xd5 ♖xd5 10.♗xd4 ♖xd4 11.♖e1 0-0 (11...0-0-0? 12.♙e3 ♖d6 13.♙xc5 ♖xc5 14.♖e4+-) 12.♙xb7 ♖ab8 13.♙g2±.

● 8...0-0 9.♙e3 (9.♙g5 h6 10.♙xf6 ♖xf6 11.♗e4 ♗xf3+) 9...♖e8

– 10.h3 ♗xf3+ 11.♙f3 ♙e3 12.hxg4 ♙d4 13.g5 ♙xc3 14.gxf6 ♙xb2 15.♖b1 ♖xf6 (15...♙d4 16.♖xb7±) 16.♙e4 ♙d4 17.♖xb7 ♙b6 and Black is fine.

– 10.♗e4 ♗xe4 11.dxe4 ♖f6 12.♙xd4 and White is better.

In general, there are too many problematic lines for Black after 6...♙c5. Finding an improvement in one line is clearly not enough. So it is better to concentrate our efforts on 6...♙g4.

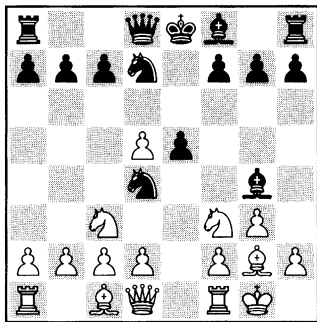
Now White has two main possibilities:

- C1) 7.0-0  
C2) 7.h3

### Variation C1

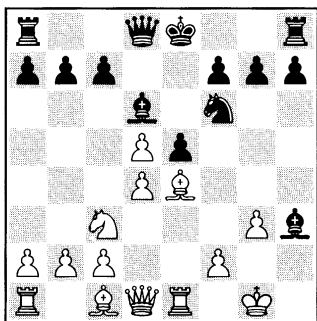
#### 7.0-0 ♖b4

In practice the direct 7...♘d7!? has also occurred.



Black now threatens 8...♗f6, so White must act.

8.h3 ♘xf3+ 9.♙xf3 ♙xh3 10.♞e1 ♙d6  
11.♙e4 (preventing Black from castling)  
11...♘f6 (bad is 11...h5 12.d4 f5 (12...♙g4  
13.f3 exd4 14.♘e2) 13.dxe5) 12.d4



The critical position. The game Dzhumayev-Coleman, Mumbai 2004, now went: 12...0-0 13.dxe5 ♙xe5 14.♙xh7+ ♜xh7 15.♞xe5±.

Instead of castling Black should play: 12...exd4! 13.♗xd4 (13.♙f3+ ♙e7 14.♗xd4 0-0 15.♙f4 ♙d6) 13...0-0 14.♙g5 ♙d7 (14...♞e8 15.♙xh7+!; 14...h6 15.♙xf6 ♗xf6 16.♗xf6 gxf6 17.♘b5) 15.♙g2 h6 16.♙xf6 ♗xf6 17.♗xf6 gxf6 18.♘e4 ♙e5 19.c3 ♙f5 and White has a slight edge.

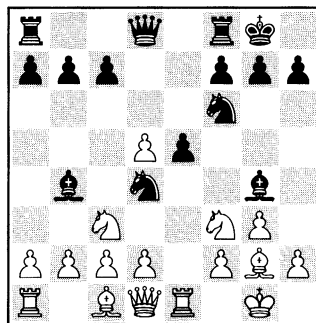
#### 8.♞e1 0-0!?

After the first sacrifice there is no choice but to sac the e-pawn too.

Timid is 8...♗d6 9.a3 ♙a5 and now:

● 10.b4 ♙b6 11.♘a4 (11.♙b2 0-0 12.d3 ♞ae8 13.♘e4 ♘xe4 14.dxe4 f5 15.exf5 ♘xf3+ 16.♙xf3 ♙xf2+ 17.♜xf2 ♞xf5→) 11...♘d5 12.♘b6 axb6 13.♙b2 0-0 14.♙xd4 exd4 15.h3 ♙h5 16.g4 ♙g6 17.♘d4 ♘f4 and Black has good compensation.

● 10.h3! ♙xf3 (or 10...♘f3+ 11.♙xf3 ♙xh3 12.d4) 11.♙xf3 ♙xc3 12.dxc3 ♘xf3+ 13.♗xf3 and White keeps his extra pawn.

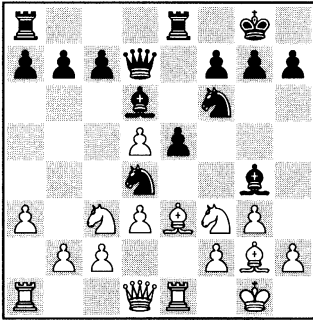


#### 9.a3

Again it is quite dangerous to take the second pawn: 9.♞xe5 ♗d6 10.♞e3 ♙c5 11.♘e4 ♘xe4 12.♞xe4 f5 13.♞f4 ♞ae8 and Black has the initiative.

After 9.h3 ♘xf3+ 10.♙xf3 Black should not play 10...♙xh3 11.♞xe5 ♗d7 12.d4 ♙d6 13.♞e1 (13.♙f4!?) when Black has to prove his compensation. Stronger is simply 10...♙xf3; after 11.♗xf3 ♞e8 White has nothing special.

9...♙d6 10.d3 ♖d7 11.♙e3 ♜fe8

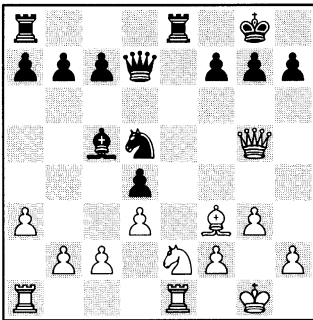


Black has pressure for the pawn. White has probably nothing better than:

12.♙xd4 exd4 13.♗e2 ♙c5

This is stronger than the immediate 13...♙xf3 14.♙xf3 ♙e5 15.c4 dxc3ep 16.♗xc3 (not 16.bxc3 ♗xd5 17.d4 ♙f6 18.c4 ♗e7) 16...♙xc3 17.bxc3 ♗xd5 (or 17...♙xe1+ 18.♖xe1 ♜e8 19.♖b1 ♖f5 20.♙e4 ♖e5 21.♖b3±) 18.c4 ♜xe1+ 19.♖xe1 ♜e8 20.♖a5 ♗b6 21.♞d1 (stronger than 21.♖xa7 ♖xd3 22.♖xb7 ♗xc4 23.♖b5 ♜f8 24.♙g2 ♖c3 25.♞d1 ♗xa3) 21...a6 22.♙xb7 ♗xc4 23.♖xa6 and White is better.

14.♖d2 ♙xf3 15.♙xf3 ♗xd5 16.♖g5



16...c6

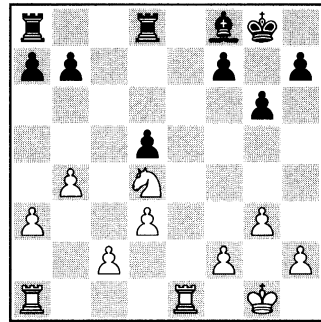
After 16...♞ad8, Black's weak back rank is a

real cause of anxiety, e.g., 17.♗xd4 ♙xd4 18.♖xd5 ♖xd5 19.♙xd5 c6 (19...♜xe1+ 20.♜xe1 ♙xb2 21.♜e7±) 20.♙f3 ♙xb2 21.♜xe8+ ♜xe8 22.♞b1 ♙xa3 23.♙xb7 and White has a serious edge.

17.♙xd5 ♖xd5

Bad is 17...cxd5 18.♗f4 f5 19.♖h5±, planning 20.♖f3.

18.♖xd5 cxd5 19.♗f4 ♜ed8 20.b4 ♙f8 21.♗e2 g6 22.♗xd4



22...♞ac8!?

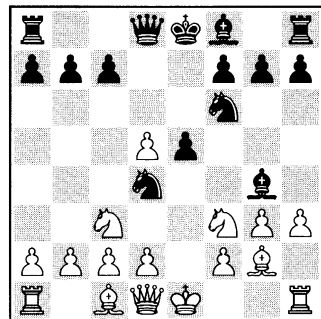
Stronger than the natural 22...♙g7 23.c3 ♜ac8 24.♞ac1 ♙xd4 25.cxd4 ♗f8±.

23.♞a2 ♙g7 24.♗b3 ♗f8

Black clearly has compensation, as it is hard for White to improve his position.

### Variation C2

7.h3

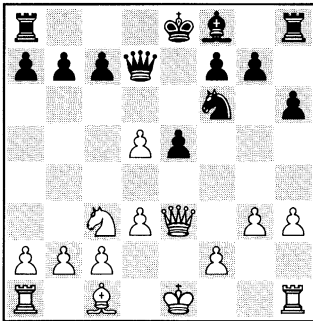


White admits that he cannot keep the gambit pawn. However, by forcing Black to release the tension, he plays for a small opening advantage. Possibly this is the best choice against our ‘Belgrade Gambit’.

**7...♘xf3+ 8.♙xf3 ♙xf3 9.♚xf3 ♙b4**

Black can also prepare queenside castling with 9...♚d7, after 10.d3 the immediate 10...0-0-0 allows the annoying pin 11.♙g5. Play may continue 11...♙b4 (11...♙e7 12.♚e3 or 12.0-0-0) 12.♙xf6 gxf6 13.♚xf6 ♚xd5 14.0-0.

Therefore, 10...h6 is sensible – planning 11.♙d2 0-0-0 12.0-0-0 ♘xd5. White, on the other hand, should play 11.♚e3:



● 11... ♙b4 12.♚xe5+ ♘f8 13.♘f1 ♚e8 14.♚d4 c5 15.♚c4 b6 16.♙d2±.

● 11... ♙d6 12.♙d2 0-0 13.♚f3 ♘h7 14.g4 f5 15.gxf5 ♚xf5 16.♚g4 ♘f6 17.♚g6±.

**10.0-0-0 11.♚e1**

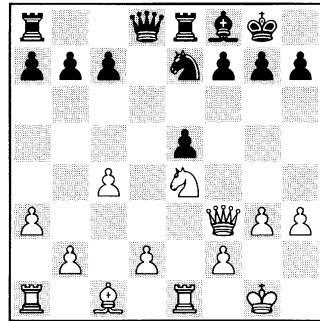
The game Houska-Pirrot, Germany Bundesliga 2003/04, now went 11.d3 ♚d7 12.♘h2 ♙xc3 13.bxc3 ♘xd5 14.♚e1 ♚fe8 15.♙d2 c5 16.♙ab1 b6 17.a4 ♘c7, and although White won it is clear that she has nothing special at this stage.

Indeed, after 11.d3 Black can also play the simple 11...♙xc3 12.bxc3 ♚xd5 13.♚xd5 ♘xd5 14.♙d2 ♚fe8 15.c4 ♘e7 16.♙c3 ♘c6 17.♙ab1 b6 18.♚fe1 f6 when he is OK, and won the ending, in Gavrillakis-Gustafsson,

Aghia Pelagia 2004.

**11...♚e8 12.d3**

Too sophisticated is 12.♘e4. After 12...♘xd5 13.a3 ♙f8 (but not 13...♙e7 14.♘c3 ♘xc3 15.bxc3 c6 16.♚xe5 ♚d7 17.♘g2) 14.c4 (14.d3 ♚d7) 14...♘e7! (stronger than 14...♘b6 15.b3 ♚d7 16.g4 ♚ad8 17.♙b2 c6 18.♚e3 with a slight advantage for White)



it is Black who plays for the win! 15.♘g5 f6 16.♘e6 ♚c8 17.♘xf8 and now Black should recapture in the right way:

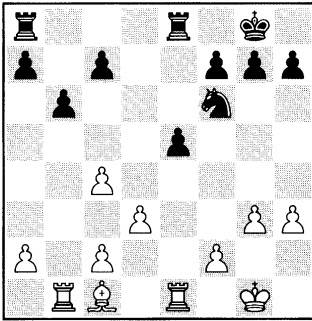
Bad is 17...♘xf8 18.♚xe5 ♚hx3 and now 19.d4 ♘g6 20.♚xe8+ ♚xe8 21.♙d2, or 19.♚h5 ♚e6 20.♚xb7!. In both cases White is slightly better.

However, after the correct 17...♚xf8! Black is just better because of the weaknesses in White’s camp (h3, d4). A sample line would be 18.d4 ♘c6 19.dxe5 (19.♙e3 ♚hx3) 19...fxe5 20.♚d5+ ♘h8 (20...♚f7) 21.♘g2 ♚f5 22.♙e3 ♚ad8 23.♚b5 ♘d4 24.♙xd4 ♚f3+ 25.♘gl exd4 (25...♚xd4) 26.♚f1 d3.

**12...♙xc3 13.bxc3 ♚xd5**

Worse is 13...♘xd5. The following manoeuvres are characteristic of the Glek Variation: 14.♙b1 b6 15.c4 ♘f6 (15...♘c3 16.♙b3±) 16.♙b2 ♘d7 17.♚e3 and White is slightly better.

**14.♚xd5 ♘xd5 15.♙b1 b6 16.c4 ♘f6**



Here 16...♘c3 only leads the knight astray –  
 17.♞b3 ♘xa2 18.♙b2 a5 19.c3 ♞ad8 20.♞a1  
 ♞xd3 21.♞xa2±.

17.♙g2 ♘d7 18.f4 f6 19.fxe5 ♘xe5  
 20.♙f4 ♙f7

Black has no problems to keep the balance in this endgame.

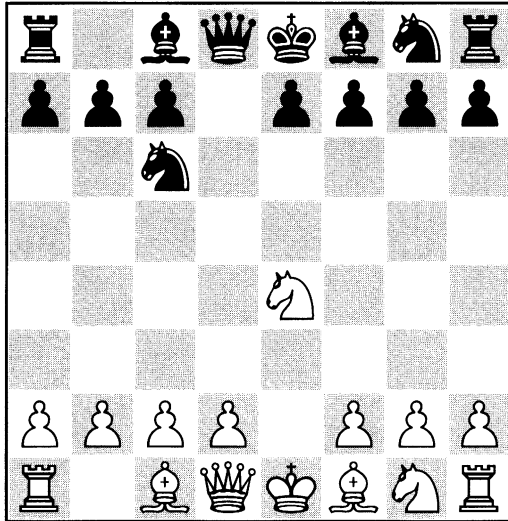
### Conclusion

So we have demonstrated that against the Glek Variation the reversed Belgrade Gambit – 4...d5 5.exd5 ♘d4!? – leads to quite playable positions for Black. Probably, only 6.♙g2 leaves White some chances for a small opening advantage. Clearly more practical tests are needed, of course. And, yes, with such a heavy main course there is no room left for a desert.

# CHAPTER 13

## *Jeroen Bosch*

# Beating the Van Geet



NIC KEY VO 12.3

1. ♖c3 d5 2. e4 dxe4 3. ♗xe4 ♘c6

The Dutch IM Dick van Geet has made a large contribution to the theory and popularization of 1. ♖c3 and scored some nice results with it. The Van Geet Opening has independent significance, even though play often transposes into 1.e4 lines. Both White and Black have to be alert to all sorts of transpositions or near-transpositions. While Caro-Kann and French Defence players have little to worry about, 1...e5 and 1...c5 players should beware.

The following entertaining game is used as a model for an SOS weapon versus 1. ♖c3. If the fairly sharp 3... ♘c6!? is not to your liking, don't worry, some other suggestions are presented here, too.

□ **James Plaskett**  
 ■ **Jonathan Speelman**  
 Gibraltar 2003

### 1. ♖c3 d5

1.e4 e5 players ought to watch out here: 1...e5 cannot be recommended, since 2. ♗f3 ♘c6 3.d4 contains quite a few pitfalls. Actually, 1... ♗f6 2.e4 e5 is a good option for the 1.e4 e5 player.

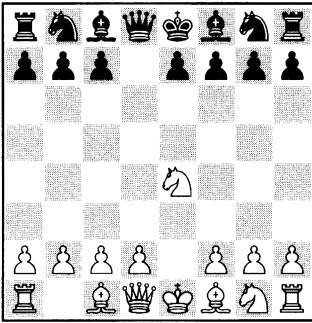
### 2.e4

This position is sometimes reached via the Scandinavian move order: 1.e4 d5 2. ♖c3. While this is not too common, it was in fact the actual course of our present game.

### 2...dxe4

Black aims for an open position with plenty of active piece play (for both sides!). At this stage there are numerous alternatives, of course. Thus, 2...e6, 2...c6 and 2...d6 all lead to positions from regular 1.e4 openings (the French, Caro-Kann and Alekhine respectively) while 2...d4 3.d2 is an important and independent line in the Van Geet Opening.

**3. dxe4**



**3... d6!?**

This is what this SOS is all about. Black intends to develop quickly, putting his pieces on natural squares. A general developing set-up is: d5 (or g4), e6, d6, e7 and 0-0. Naturally, it is no good to switch to automatic pilot. It surely makes sense to see what your opponent does and the current game is an excellent case in point.

As mentioned above, we will look at some alternatives here. They are given in ascending SOS order.

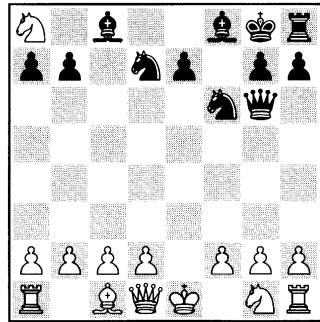
A) 3...e6 is a little meek. White need not even transpose into the Rubinstein French.

B) 3...c6 The previous remark applies here, too. White may try to find a more useful move than 4.d4.

C) 3...e5?! This is actually quite careless, after 4.d4 we have one of those typical Van Geet positions where Black has to perform a tightrope act to stay in the game:

- 4...e7 5. Wh5 dh6 6.d3 1-0 (Van Geet-Sande, cr Volmac 1986) was obviously not to Black's liking. Likewise,
- 4...d5 5. Wf3 dg6 6.dg5! leaves Black in dire straits.
- 4...d6 is comparatively best.

D) 3...d7 is a very reliable line. Black plays Karpov's favourite Caro-Kann without having 'wasted' a move on ...c6. Even here there is a trap to avoid, though: 4.d4 dg6 5.dxf6+ dxf6 6.d3 dg4= is just like a very innocent Caro-Kann – again without c6) 4...dgf6 allows a tactic 5.dxf7+ dxf7 6.dg5+ dg8 7.d6 We8 8.dxc7 Wg6 9.dxa8



9...Wxg2 (perhaps 9...d5! 10.Wf3 d7f6 gives enough compensation, Krajinak-Obsivac, Olomouc 1998) 10.Wf3 Wxf3 11.dxf3 de8 12.a4, and White looks better. The game Krajinak-Obsivac is worth looking into, though. Then 4...dgf6 becomes a clever move to provoke the complications after 5.dxf7+. Instead of 4...dgf6 the other knight may also go to f6. So, 4...d6 is quite safe for Black, as is 4...e6.

On the whole, 3...d7 is very sound, but no points for surprise value!

E) 3...d5 leaves White a choice between:

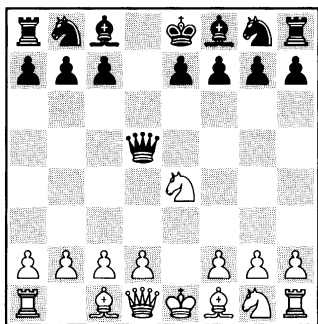
- 4.Wf3! The point of this move is 4...Wd5 5.d6+ Wxd6 6.Wxf5, and White is possi-



bly slightly better. However, as Wahls points out, 4...♙g6! is strong. For as Wahls demonstrates, 5.♘c5? c6 6.♘xb7? ♖b6 7.♗b3 ♘d7 loses, as the knight is trapped.

– Stronger is 4.♘g3 ♙g6 5.♘f3 or 5.h4 h6 6.♘f3. The position resembles the classical Caro-Kann, but without the pawn moves d4 and c6. Food for thought. The game A.Hoffmann-Kacheishvilli, New York Masters 2004, saw Black gaining the upper hand fairly quickly: 4.♘g3 ♙g6 5.♘f3 ♘d7 6.♙c4 e6 7.d3 ♘gf6 8.♖e2 ♙e7 9.♙d2 0-0 10.0-0 c6 11.♗b1 ♞e8 12.♞he1 b5 13.♙b3 a5 and Black's attack is well on its way.

F) 3...♗d5!?



This is a very witty answer, only playable if the Scandinavian is part of your repertoire.

In fact, White has little better than to 'acquiesce' with 4.♘c3 ♖a5. Some alternatives:

– 4.♘g3 ♘c6 5.♘f3 e5, as in Rauber-Prié, Yerevan Olympiad 1996.

– 4.d3 is passive, but perhaps a tad better for White.

– 4.♗f3 ♙f5 5.♘d6+ Klip-Baekelant, Belgium tt 2001/02, is an amusing transposition to 3...♙f5. Superior is Wahls' suggestion of 4...♘c6 5.♘c3 ♖e5+, with equality. White was too ambitious in Karagiannis-Tzermidianos, Aghia Pelagia 2004: 4...♘c6 5.♘e2 e5 6.♘d2c3 ♖e6 7.♘b5?! ♗d7 8.♙c4 a6 9.♘g5 ♘h6 and now White is forced to retire-

at his forces, after 10.♘c3 ♘d4 11.♗g3? ♘xc2+ 12.♗d1 ♘xa1 13.♖xe5+ ♖e7 Black was winning.

So if you want a safe and reliable line versus 1.♘c3, then play 3...♘d7. If you want the Scandinavian: play 3...♗d5. And if you want to win in 13 moves: play like Speelman!

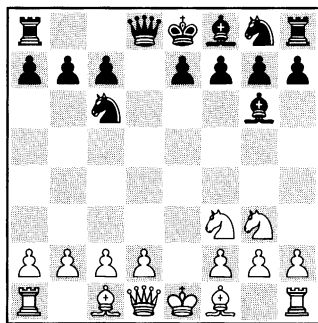
**4.♙b5?!**

This move is very logical, but Black's reply refutes the whole idea. There are two main alternatives: 4.♘f3 and 4.♙c4. Here are some examples of how play might develop:

A) 4.♘f3

A1) 4...♙g4 5.♙c4 (5.h3 ♙h5 6.♘g3 ♙g6 7.♘h4 ♘f6 8.♘xg6 hxg6 9.c3!? was Sergeev-Londyn, Trinec 2002; and 5.♙b5 ♗d5 is nice for Black – compare with Plaskett-Speelman) 5...♘f6!? 6.h3!? ♙f5 7.♘g3 ♙g6 8.0-0 e6 9.d4 ♙d6, and Black is fine, Bosman-Van der Werf, Bussum tt 1992.

A2) 4...♙f5 5.♘g3 ♙g6

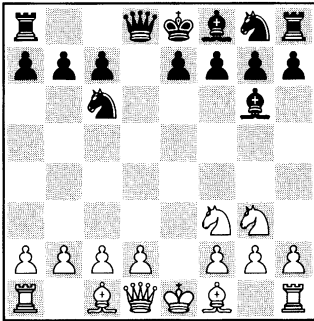


– 6.♙b5 ♗d5? 7.c4 ♗d6 8.d4 0-0-0 9.0-0 a6 10.♙xc6 ♖xc6 11.♙f4 was Garbarino-Needleman, Buenos Aires 1993. Of course Black should play 6...♗d6.

– 6.d4?! ♘b4! is primitive but effective: 7.♙b5+ c6 8.♙a4 ♖a5 9.c3 ♘d3+ 10.♗f1 ♘f6 11.♙c2 ♘xc1 12.♖xc1 e6, and Black is slightly better, Marquardt-Ott, Bad Wiessee 1998.

- 6.h4!? is interesting.
- 6.♖c4 e6 7.d3 a6 8.♗d2 h6 9.♞e2 ♘f6 10.0-0 ♗e7 11.a4 0-0 with equal chances, Berthoole-Ljubojevic, Antwerp 1997. Black later won in great style.

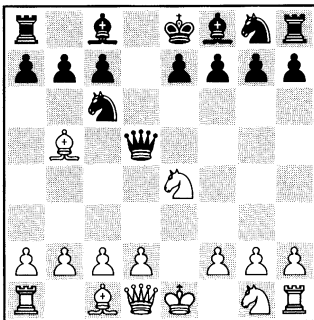
B) 4.♖c4 ♗f5 (4...♘h6!? 5.d3 ♘f5 6.♘e2 g6 7.♗d2 ♗g7 8.♖c3 e5, and Black was slightly better in Kristensen-N.J.Fries Nielsen, Aarhus 1981) 5.♘g3 ♗g6



- 6.♘f3 e6 7.d4 ♘f6 8.0-0 ♗e7 is fairly equal, Figueroa-Paz, Mar del Plata 1991.
- 6.h4 h6 7.h5 ♗h7 8.♘f3 e6 9.d3 ♘f6 10.♞e2 ♗e7 looks like an easy Caro-Kann for Black, Bibik-Tarasov, Lahti 1999.

- 6.♘1e2 e5 7.d3 ♘f6 8.0-0 ♗c5 9.♗e3 ♗xe3 10.fxe3 ♘g4 11.♞c1 ♞g5, is OK for Black, Schlindwein-Hammes, German U-17 Championship 1991.

4...♞d5!



Excellent! Black ignores his typical developing scheme and opening rules like 'don't play the queen too soon'. Her majesty can perform miracles from the central d5 square. She attacks two minor pieces, defends c6 and eyes the diagonal a8-h1 (in particular the g2 square).

5.♞e2

White lost the thread in Den Hartog-Konijn, Hengelo 2001, with 5.♘c3 ♞xcg2 6.♞f3 ♗h3.

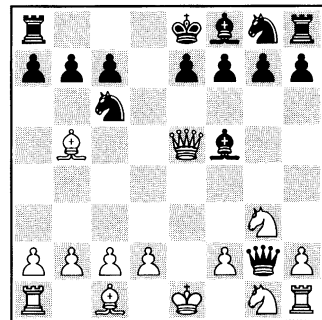
5...♗f5 6.♘g3

6.f3 is too ugly to consider, but having got this far, White should probably swallow his pride and play 6.♗xc6+ ♞xc6 7.d3 ♘f6 8.♘xf6+ ♞xf6, as in Sziva-De Kleuver, Dutch Women Championship 1998.

6...♞xcg2

A curious moment. It is difficult to condemn Speelman's move, which after all does win him the game in a mere 13 moves. However, if the analysis on move 9 holds up, then 6...♞xcg2 must be regarded as a mistake. Luckily, there is a strong alternative available here in the form of 6...♗xc2!

7.♞e5!



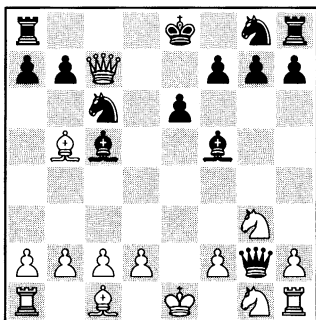
The point of Plaskett's previous move. The move 7.♘f3 fails to 7...♗g4, which wins on the spot.

7...e6 8.♞xc7

Forced, as 8.f3? does not trap the queen on

account of 8...♙d6. White now threatens to take on b7.

8...♙c5



As there is no satisfactory defence to White's threat Black has to counter-attack. Play is razor-sharp and one mistake may decide the game.

**9. ♖f4**

This is an admission of failure.

Executing the threat is no alternative:

A) 9. ♖xb7 ♙xf2+ (9... ♖xf2+? 10. ♔d1+-- ) 10. ♔d1 ♙g4+ 11. ♗1e2 ♙xe2+ 12. ♙xe2 ♖b8, and now, if the queen goes, bishop takes g3 decides, so White is forced to play 13. ♙f1 ♖f3+ 14. ♙e2 ♖xh1+ 15. ♗xh1 ♖xb7 16. ♗xf2, and Black is an exchange up.

B) 9. ♔d1 ♗e7 10. ♖xb7 0-0 and Black is fully developed and ready for execution.

C) 9. d4 ♙xd4 10. ♙e3 ♙xe3 11. fxe3 ♗e7 is good for Black, too.

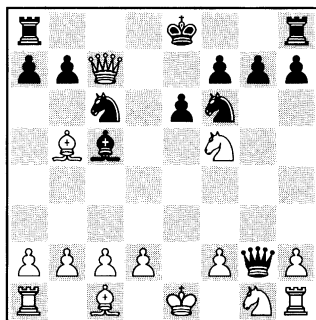
However, the next move needs to be investigated in depth:

D) 9. ♗xf5!?

D1) 9...exf5 10. ♖xb7+--

D2) 9... ♖xh1 10. ♔f1! ♔f8 11. ♖xb7 ♖d8 12. ♙xc6 ♖xh2 13. ♗e3, or even 13. d4, and in both cases White is better!

D3) 9... ♗f6! This is best, the lines now fork:



D31) 10. ♖xb7 0-0 11. ♖xc6 ♙xf2+ 12. ♔d1 ♗d5 13. ♗e7+ ♔h8 14. ♗xd5 exd5+.

D32) 10. ♗g3 ♙xf2+ 11. ♔d1 ♙xg3 12. ♖xb7 0-0 13. ♖xc6 ♗e4+.

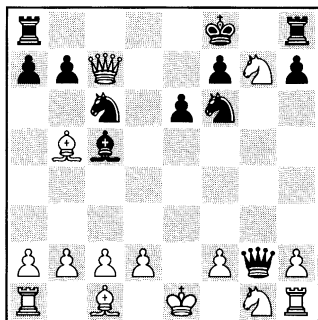
D33) 10. ♗d6+ ♙xd6 11. ♖xb7 0-0, and Black is better.

D34) 10. ♙xc6+!? bxc6 11. ♗xg7+ ♔f8 with two possibilities:

D341) 12. ♗xe6+ fxe6 13. ♖f4 ♔e7 14. ♖f3 ♙xf2+ 15. ♔e2 ♖hg8, with nice compensation.

D342) 12. ♖f4 ♖xh1 13. ♗xe6+ ♔e7 14. ♗xc5 ♖xg1+ 15. ♔e2 ♖he8 16. d3 ♔f8+ 17. ♙e3 ♖xal 18. ♖xf6 ♔g8 19. ♖g5+, with perpetual check.

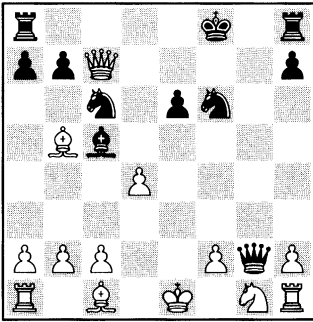
D35) 10. ♗xg7+! ♔f8 and now:



D351) not 11. ♖f4 ♗d4 12. ♖xf6 ♖xh1

13. ♖xe6+ ♘xe6 14. ♖xh8+ ♚e7, and Black wins, but

D352) 11. ♖xe6+ fx6 12.d4!



Now White has excellent attacking chances, e.g. 12... ♖xh1 13. ♖h6+ ♚e8 14.0-0-0, with a winning initiative. Also 12... ♖b4+ fails to impress after 13.c3 ♖xh1 (13... ♘xd4 14. ♖h6+ ♚g8 15.cxb4 ♘xb5 16. ♖e7+-) 14. ♖h6+ ♚e8 15.0-0-0.

In summary, White can make a draw with 9. ♘f5 ♘f6 10. ♖xc6+ (line D342). He would even get excellent chances with 9. ♘f5 ♘f6 10. ♘g7+ ♚f8 11. ♖xe6+ (line D352).

**9...0-0-0**

Black has other options, but who could find fault with this developing move that unpins the knight as well.

**10. ♖xc6**

This is more or less forced, as 10.d3 ♘b4 is awkward to meet: 11. ♖a4 ♖xd3; 11. ♚d1 ♖xf2; 11. ♖d2 ♖xf2+.

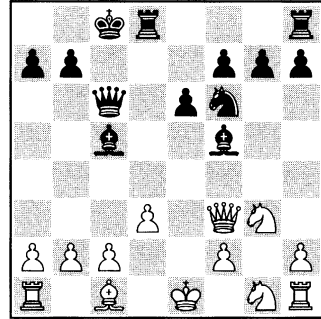
Also bad is 10. ♖f1 ♖d5 11.c4 (11. ♖c4 ♖xf2+ 12. ♚xf2 (12. ♖xf2 ♖xc4) 12... ♖c5+ 13. ♚g2 ♖d4) 11... ♖d4, with a

pleasant edge.

**10... ♖xc6 11.d3 ♘f6**

Black is fully developed and has no weaknesses. The opposite holds true for his opponent.

**12. ♖f3**



Defending the rook so that ♘f5 could finally be on the cards. The following neat tactic puts an immediate stop to White's suffering, though.

**12... ♖b4+ 13. ♖d2**

There is no way out: 13.c3 ♖xc3+, while 13. ♚f1 ♖h3+ wins the queen.

**13... ♖xc2!**

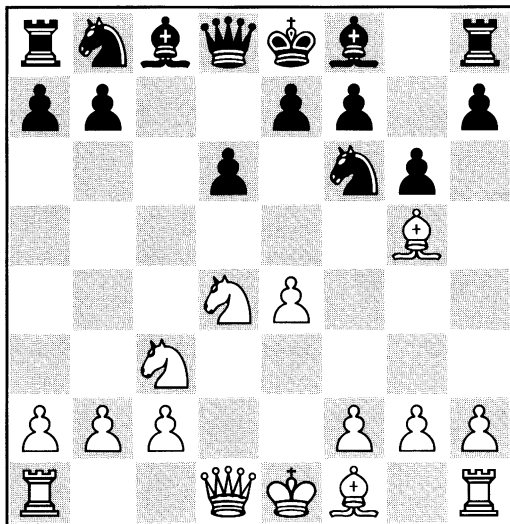
And Plaskett resigned, as 14. ♖xb4 ♖xb2 15. ♖d1 ♖xb4+ 16. ♚f1 ♖xd3+ leaves him three pawns down.

In conclusion, it is easy for White to go wrong after 3... ♘c6!? Indeed, after 4. ♖b5 ♖d5! Black is already slightly better. The position after 9. ♘f5! is worth analysing. This move gives White the advantage, so Black should refrain from 6... ♖xg2 and play 6... ♖xc2 instead.

## CHAPTER 14

*Dorian Rogozenko*

# A Latvian Speciality vs the Dragon



NIC KEY SI 15.1

### Bishop Aggression 6. ♖g5 and 7. ♖b5

The Sicilian Defence is usually the biggest problem for 1.e4 players. Some players prefer to play 'Anti-Sicilian' lines, since there are simply too many variations in Open Sicilians. Such an approach has some drawbacks, though, the biggest one is perhaps that once you are used to those Anti-Sicilians you will find it much more difficult to switch to Open Sicilian type of positions. Here I would like to present a system that is easy to study, but, at the same time, both ambitious and aggressive. It can also serve as a good starting point for getting used to those sharp positions with kings on opposite wings. Does this sound too good to be true? Let me convince you with the games below!

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♘xd4  
♘f6 5.♘c3 g6 6.♖g5

This is an old and somewhat forgotten continuation. White can connect it with two possible plans. In the beginning White players used to follow-up with ♔d2 and 0-0-0, in a way similar to the Yugoslav Attack. Later the Latvian Master Alvis Vitolinsh found new and dangerous ideas for White in a different set-up: ♖b5+, then ♔e2 and 0-0-0. This will be our present subject. In this second case White can create dangerous threats because of the central advance e4-e5. Black must avoid quite a few traps in this opening line, and, he should actually know the theory very well in order to avoid quick problems.

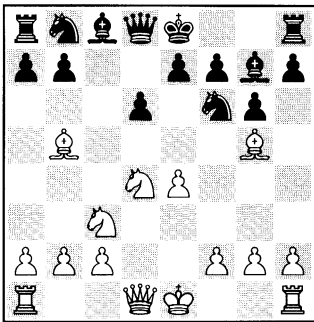
From the modern GMs who employ this plan with White I should like to single out Alexander Shabalov (another former Latvian). He scored 100% with it so far, although against much lower rated opponents, one must add.

□ Alvis Vitolinsh

■ Boris Alterman

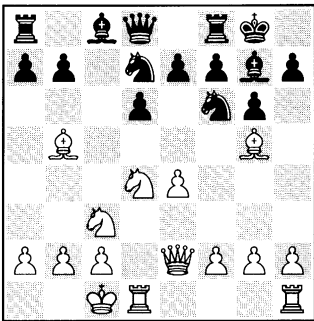
Naberezhnie Chelni 1988

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♘xd4  
♙f6 5.♙c3 g6 6.♙g5 ♙g7 7.♙b5+



7...♙d7

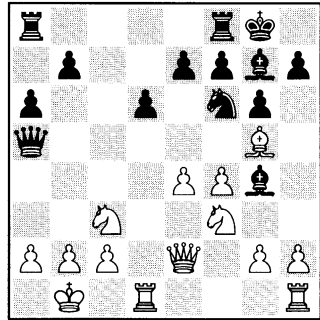
The most natural and strongest answer. Another possibility is 7...♘bd7 8.♙e2 0-0 9.0-0-0,



and now:

A) 9...♙a5?! 10.♘b3 ♙c7 11.♙xd7  
♙xd7 (11...♙xd7 12.e5±) 12.♙xf6±  
Lakos-Kahn, Balatonbereny 1996.

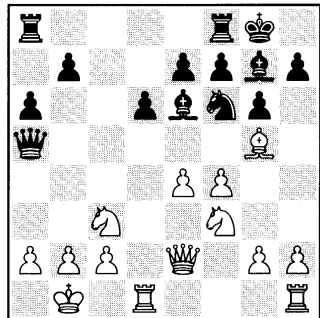
B) 9...a6 10.♙xd7 ♙xd7 11.f4 (White has a typical slight advantage thanks to his better control in the center and the constant threat e4-e5) 11...♙g4 12.♘f3 ♙a5 13.♙b1



B1) 13...♙fe8 14.h3 ♙xf3 15.♙xf3 ♙ac8  
16.♙he1 ♙c5 17.♙e3 ♙ec8 18.e5 dxe5  
19.fxe5 ♙xe5 20.♙xb7 ♙e8 21.b4 ♙a3  
22.♙xe5 ♙xc3 23.♙c5 ♙g3 24.♙c1+-  
Gy.Horvath-Ahn, Budapest 1996.

B2) 13...♙ac8 14.♙xf6! exf6 (14...♙xf6  
15.♘d5±) 15.f5± Bratanov-Trent, Porto  
San Giorgio 2000.

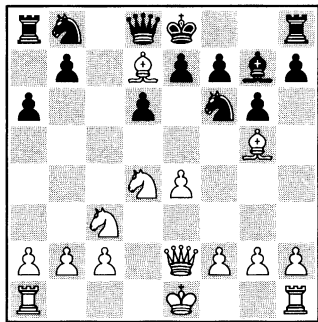
B3) 13...♙e6



14.♙xf6! ♙xf6 15.♘d5 ♙xd5 16.♙xd5 ♙b6

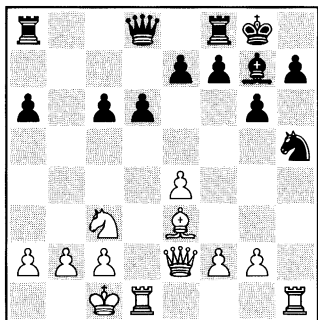
17.e5 ♖g7 18.♞hd1 ♞fd8 19.c4 ♞ac8 20.b3 dxe5 21.fxe5 ♞xd5 22.♞xd5 a5 23.♞b5 ♖c7 24.♖e4 b6 25.♖d4 ♞b8 26.♞d5 a4 27.♞d7±

Yurtaev-S.B.Hansen, Copenhagen 1991.  
**8.♖e2 a6 9.♞xd7+**



**9...♞bxd7**

Let us examine the alternative captures. Let's start with the artificial looking 9...♞fxd7. Black plans to develop the queen's knight on c6, but as usual the absence of the other knight from f6 offers White more chances for a kingside attack. 10.0-0-0 ♞c6 11.♞e3 0-0 (it is probably better to delay castling and play 11...♞c8 first) 12.h4 ♞f6 (12...h5 13.g4 hxg4 14.h5 is dangerous) 13.h5!? (13.g4→) 13...♞xh5 14.♞xc6 bxc6



15.♞xh5 g4 16.♖xh5∞.

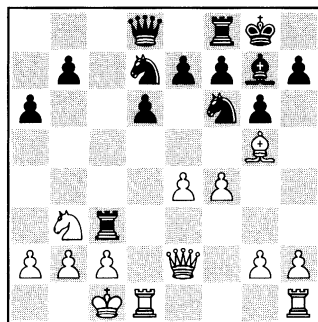
Black may also take back with the queen: 9...♖xd7 10.0-0-0

– 10...0-0 11.♞xf6 (11.f4!?) 11...♞xf6 12.♞d5 ♞xd4 13.♞xd4 ♞c6 14.♞d3±.  
 – 10...♞c6 11.♞xc6 ♖xc6 (11...bxc6 12.e5±) 12.♞d5±.

**10.0-0-0**

There is an interesting alternative at this stage: 10.h4!? ♞c8 11.♞h3 h5 12.0-0-0 0-0 13.♞b1 e6 14.♞b3 ♞c6 15.f4 ♖c7 16.♞hd3± b5 17.a3 ♞c8 18.♞d2 ♞b8 19.♖d1 b4 20.axb4 ♞xb4 21.e5 ♞e8 22.♖f3 ♞b6 23.♞d8! ♖d7 24.♞xb6 ♞bxb6 25.g4→

A.Frolov-Palkövi, Siofok 1990.  
**10...0-0 11.f4 ♞c8 12.♞b3 ♞xc3**



A standard exchange sacrifice in order to get counterplay. In the game White defends counter pawn c3, then builds his own play, proving that his chances are preferable.

**13.bxc3 ♖c7 14.♞d3± e6**

I think that 14...♞b6 15.♞hd1 (15.e5?! ♞fd5) 15...♞c4 would have kept more practical chances for Black. But not 15...♞c8 16.e5±.

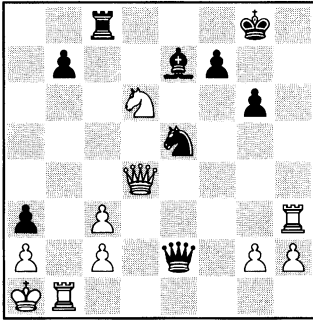
**15.f5 ♞e5 16.♞h3 exf5 17.exf5 ♞c8 18.♞d1 ♖c6**

18...a5 19.fxg6 hxg6 (19...fxg6 20.♖b5±) 20.♞d4±.

**19.♞xf6 ♞xf6 20.♖f2 a5 21.fxg6 ♞g5+ 22.♞b1 hxg6 23.♖d4 a4**

23...♖xg2 24.♞g3 ♖e2 25.♞xg5 ♞f3 26.♞xg6+ fxg6 27.♖xd6±.

24.♖d2 ♖b5+ 25.♔a1 a3 26.♖b1  
 ♗e2 27.♗e4 ♙e7 28.♗xd6+—



With precise play White has achieved a winning position.

28...♖d8 29.♗e4 ♗xe4 30.♗xe4 f5  
 31.♗f2 ♖d2 32.♗d3 ♙f6 33.♗xe5  
 ♙xe5 34.♖xb7 ♖xg2 35.♖e3 ♖g1+  
 36.♖b1 ♖xb1+ 37.♗xb1 ♙xh2 38.c4

In spite of all efforts Black ends up in a technically lost position.

38...♗f7

38...f4 39.♖f3 g5 40.c5 ♗f7 41.c6 ♗e7  
 42.♖d3 f3 43.♖xf3 ♗d6 44.♖xa3+—;  
 38...g5 39.c5 g4 40.c6 ♙c7 41.♖e8+ ♗f7  
 42.♖c8+—.

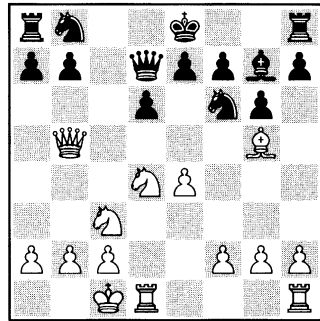
39.c5 g5 40.c6 g4 41.♗c1 ♙d6  
 42.♖c3 ♙c7 43.♗d1 f4 44.♗e2 ♗e6  
 45.♖d3 ♙b6 46.c4 f3+ 47.♗f1 ♙c7  
 48.c5 ♙b8 49.♗f2 ♙c7 50.♖d4 ♙b8  
 51.♖d8 ♙c7 52.♖d4 ♙b8 53.♖xg4  
 ♗d5 54.♖a4 ♗xc5 55.♖xa3 ♗xc6  
 56.♗xf3 ♙e5 57.♗e4 ♙c7 58.♗d4  
 ♙b6+ 59.♗c4 ♗b7 60.♗b5 ♙c7  
 61.♖h3 ♙b8 62.♖h7+ 1-0

□ Alvis Vitolinsh  
 ■ Leonid Yurtaev  
 Frunze 1979

1.e4 c5 2.♗f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗xd4  
 ♗f6 5.♗c3 g6 6.♙g5 ♙g7 7.♙b5+

♙d7 8.♗e2 ♗c6

Exchanging on b5 brings no relief: 8...♙xb5  
 9.♗xb5+ ♗d7 10.0-0

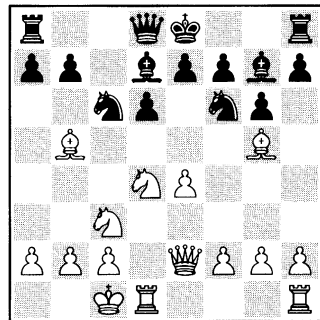


Shabalov was twice successful from this position:

– 10...♗c6 11.♗b3 ♗e5 12.f4 ♗eg4 13.♗e2  
 ♗c7 14.h3 h6 15.♙h4 g5 16.♙e1+—  
 Shabalov-Chehayeb, Las Vegas 1993.

– 10...a6 11.♗xd7+ ♗bxd7 12.f4 ♖c8  
 13.♖he1 h6 14.♙h4± g5 (14...0-0 15.e5)  
 15.♗f5! ♗f8 16.e5!± Shabalov-Leykekh-  
 man, Newark 1995.

9.0-0



9...♗xd4

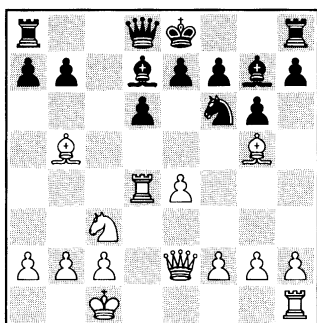
9...♖c8 10.♙xc6 (A.Schneider's recommenda-  
 tion of 10.♗xc6 bxc6 11.♙a6 ♖b8 12.e5  
 seems far from clear because of 12...♗a5!)  
 10...bxc6 11.f4 0-0 12.e5 dxe5 13.fxe5 ♗d5  
 14.♗xd5 cxd5 15.♖hf1! (the correct move.



It is instructive to see how in the next part White follows a 'dark-squared strategy', leaving opponent's light-squared bishop effectively without a job. 15.e6? fxe6 16.♗xe6 ♖b6! 17.♗xg7 ♜f2! F Ghinda-Sax, Malta ol (1980) 15...♞b8 16.c3 ♞b6 17.♜f2± a5 18.♞e3 a4 19.a3 ♞c7 20.♞e1 ♞c4 21.♖b1 ♞c5 22.♖a1± ♜fb8? 23.♗f5! ♞xe3 24.♗xe7+ ♖f8 25.♞xe3± Schula-Stoklasa, Nymburk 1997.

The best move is 9...0-0 which leads to the main line, see the next game.

**10.♞xd4**



It is amazing that here Black already faces serious problems.

**10...♞a5**

10...0-0 11.e5! ♗e8 (11...dxe5 12.♞xd7 ♗xd7 13.♞d1+-) 12.exd6+-; 10...h6 11.e5! hxg5 12.exf6 ♗xf6 13.♞xd6+-.

**11.e5!± ♗xb5**

11...dxe5 12.♞xd7 ♗xd7 13.♞d1 0-0-0 (13...♞d8 14.♞g4 f5 15.♞c4+-) 14.♗xe7±.

**12.♞xb5+ ♞xb5 13.♗xb5 dxe5**

14.♗c7+ ♖f8 15.♞b4 ♞c8

**16.♞xb7 a5**

White is also winning after the immediate 16...♗e4 17.♗e3 ♗f6 18.♞xa7 ♖g7 19.♞d1 ♗d6 20.g4 h6 21.b3 ♞hd8 22.c4 e4 23.c5 ♗e8 24.♞xd8 ♞xd8 25.♞a8 1-0 Lakos-Werner, Balatonbereny 1996.

**17.♞d1 ♗e4**

17...h6 18.♗e3 ♖g8 19.♗d5+-.

**18.♗e3 ♗d6 19.♞a7 ♗c4 20.♗c5 ♗h6+ 21.♖b1 ♖g7**

21...♗d2+ 22.♖a1 ♗e4 23.♗b6 ♞b8 24.♗d5 e6 25.♗c7+-.

**22.♗xe7 ♞b8 23.♗e6+ ♖g8 24.♞d8+ ♞xd8 25.♗xd8 ♖g7** **1-0**

□ Alvis Vitolinsh

■ Erling Mortensen

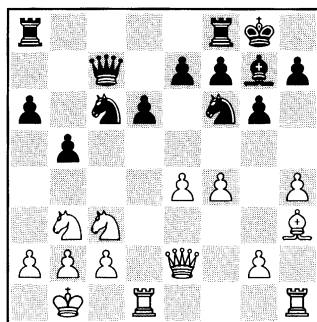
Riga 1981

**1.e4 c5 2.♗f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗xd4 ♗f6 5.♗c3 g6 6.♗g5 ♗g7 7.♗b5+ ♗d7 8.♞e2 ♗c6**

This is the main line. Let us consider kingside castling too. 8...0-0 9.0-0-0 ♞a5 (9...♗xb5 10.♞xb5 ♗bd7 11.f4 ♞b6 12.♞he1 ♞xb5 13.♗dxb5 a6 14.♗c7 ♞ac8 15.♗d7d5 ♞fe8 16.e5 dxe5 17.fxe5 ♗xd5 18.♗xd5 ♖f8 19.e6± Vitolinsh-Itkis, Moscow 1983) and now:

A) Less clear is 10.f4 ♗g4 (10...♗c6? 11.♗b3 ♞b6 12.♗xf6 ♗xf6 13.♗d5± Shabalov-Vicary, Philadelphia 1993) 11.♗f3 ♗h5 Vitolinsh-Smirin, Kuldiga 1987.

B) 10.♖b1! a6 (10...♗c6?! is answered by 11.♗b3) 11.♗xd7 ♞xg5 (11...♗bxd7 12.f4±) 12.h4 ♞a5 13.♗h3 ♗c6 14.♗b3 ♞c7 15.f4 b5 (15...e6 16.g4 b5 17.h5±)



B1) 16.g4! White has the advantage after this advance: 16...b4 (16...h5? 17.♘d5; 16...♘a5? 17.e5) 17.♘d5 ♘xd5 18.exd5 ♘a5 19.♘xa5 ♗xa5 20.h5±.

B2) 16.♘d5 16...♘xd5 17.exd5 ♘a5 18.♘xa5 ♗xa5

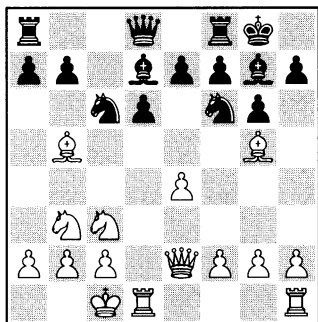
B21) 19.f5!?! ♗b4 20.c3 ♗xh4 (20...♙xc3 21.a3 ♗b3 22.♘d3) 21.fxg6 hxg6∞.

B22) 19.♗f3!?.

B23) 19.♗d2 ♗xd2 20.♙xd2 and a draw was agreed in Blodstein-Fedorov, Voskresensk 1993. I believe that even after the exchange of queens White has the slightly better chances.

### 9.0-0-0 0-0 10.♙xc6

White bravely accepts the challenge to enter the complications. But this is not the only way. A good alternative is 10.♘b3.



White plans the standard attack with h4-h5. If Black stops it by playing ...h5, then White will continue as in the Yugoslav attack – f3 and g4. It is worth mentioning that here White has certain advantages in comparison to the Yugoslav Attack: the bishops on g5 and b5 exert pressure on Black's position, which together with the advance e4-e5 can be really dangerous for Black. 10...♙e8 (10...♗c7? 11.♙xf6 exf6 12.♘d5± Anka-A.Horvath, Balatonbereny 1993; 10...a6?! 11.♙xc6 ♙xc6? 12.e5±) 11.h4 a6?! 12.♙xc6 bxc6

13.h5 ♗b6 (13...♘h5 14.♙xh5!?! gxh5 15.♗xh5±) 14.hxg6 fxg6 15.e5 ♘d5 16.♘xd5 cxd5 17.e6 ♙c6 18.♗f3 ♙f8 19.♗h3 h5 20.♙e3 ♗b4 21.♘d4 ♙xd4 22.♙xd4 ♙f4 23.♗g3 ♙g4 24.♗xg4 1-0 Martinez-Calzetta Ruiz, Palma de Mallorca 1992.

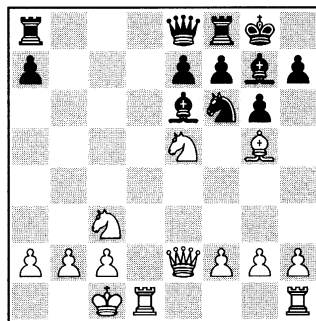
### 10...bxc6 11.e5 dxe5

Here Black has no choice and must sacrifice a pawn. 11...♗a5? 12.♘b3 happened in several games. Black can resign, since he is losing a piece.

### 12.♘c6 ♗e8

Again forced, as 12...♗c7? 13.♘xe7+ ♖h8 14.♙xf6 ♙xf6 15.♘d5 is just bad: 15...♙g5+ 16.f4 ♙xf4+ 17.♘xf4 exf4 18.♗e7 ♙f8 19.♘d5 ♗b7 20.♗f6+ ♖g8 21.♘e7+ 1-0 Geldiev-Atabaev, Ashkhabad 2000 (21...♖f8 22.♘d1 and mate on h8 follows).

### 13.♘xe5 ♙e6



This is an important position for the whole 6.♙g5 line. Black sacrificed a pawn and has long-term compensation in the form of open files on the queenside, which is usually enough in the Dragon to get good counterplay. Nevertheless, the position of Black's pieces is far from optimal yet, and White has good control over the central files. All this makes the evaluation very unclear, with chances for both sides. I think that

White has objective reasons to think that he should be able to defend and keep the extra pawn. White's main task is to trade queens. Sometimes even after returning the pawn and trading queens White will have the advantage in the endgame. This is due to either a better control over the central squares, or the better position of White's king which can quickly support the queenside pawn majority.

**14. ♖he1**

The best continuation for White. He must bring all pieces into play.

**14... ♜c8**

Bad is 14... ♜d8?!, because after 15. ♖b5 White achieves his aim: 15... ♗xb5 16. ♘xb5 ♜xd1+ 17. ♜xd1 a6? 18. ♘c7 ♕f5 19. ♘c6+— Medvegy-Popescu, San Agustin 1997. More interesting is 14... ♗c8!? 15. f3 (15. ♖b5 ♗c7 16. ♗c6 ♖a5 17. ♖b5 ♗c7 18. ♗c6 ♖a5 19. ♖b5 ½-½ Vokarev-Fedorov, Krasnodar 1998) 15... ♖b8 16. ♜d3 ♖b7 17. b3 ♜fc8 18. g4 ♖b4 19. ♗d2 ♖a3+ 20. ♖b1 a5 21. ♗c1 ♖b4 22. ♕d2 ♗c5 23. ♘a4 ♖b5 24. ♘c3 ♗c5 25. ♘a4 ♖b5 26. ♖a3 ♘d5 27. f4 ♘b4 28. ♜c3∞ f6? 29. ♘xg6 hxg6 30. ♜xe6 ♗d5 31. ♜e2± Kiss-Wukits, Aschach 1992.

**15. ♖a6**

Mortensen wrote in his comments that White is slightly better here.

Serious attention deserved 15. ♖b5. For instance:

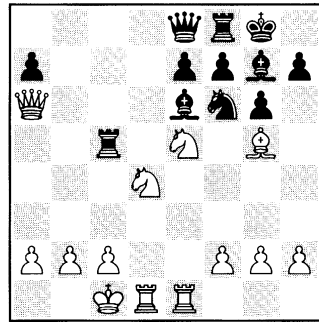
A) 15... ♗xb5 16. ♘xb5 a6 (16... ♜c5 17. ♘xa7±) 17. ♘d4±.

B) 15... ♘g4 16. ♘xg4 ♕xg4 17. ♖xe8 ♜fxe8 18. f3 ♕xc3 (18... ♕e6 19. ♘d5) 19. ♜xe7 ♜xe7 20. ♕xe7 ♕e6! 21. bxc3 ♕xa2 22. ♜d7±.

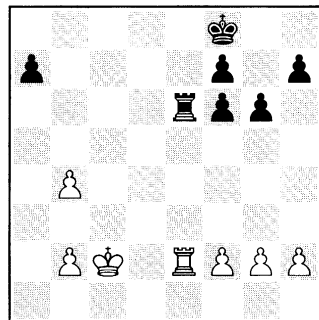
**15... ♜c7 16. ♘b5 ♜c5 17. ♘d4**

The present game is the only one available with this position, therefore it is impossible to give a final verdict. More practical tests are needed. In case you find the present posi-

tion too complicated, please keep in mind that there were several playable alternatives available earlier on (10. ♘b3, 15. ♖b5).



- 17... ♕d5 18. ♘b3 ♕xb3 19. axb3 ♖b8**  
**20. ♕xf6 ♕xf6 21. ♘d7 ♖xb3**  
**22. ♘xf6+ exf6 23. ♜e2 ♜fc8**  
 23... ♖b8 24. ♖xf6±.  
**24. ♖xc8+ ♜xc8 25. ♜d8+ ♜xd8**  
 25... ♖g7 26. ♜xc8 again White has some advantage, according to Mortensen.  
**26. cxb3 ♖f8 27. ♘c2 ♘d6 28. b4 ♜e6**



**29. ♜e6??**

An incredible blunder. After 29. ♜d2 White is slightly better, though a draw is the most likely outcome.

- 29... ♜xe6—+ 30. ♖d3 ♖e7 31. ♖c4**  
**♖d6 32. f4 h6 33. h4 h5 34. b5 e5**  
**35. ♜xe5+ ♜xe5 36. b4 ♖e6 37. ♖c5 ♖f5**

**38.♔d5 e4 39.♔d4 ♔f4 40.b6 axb6  
41.b5 0-1**

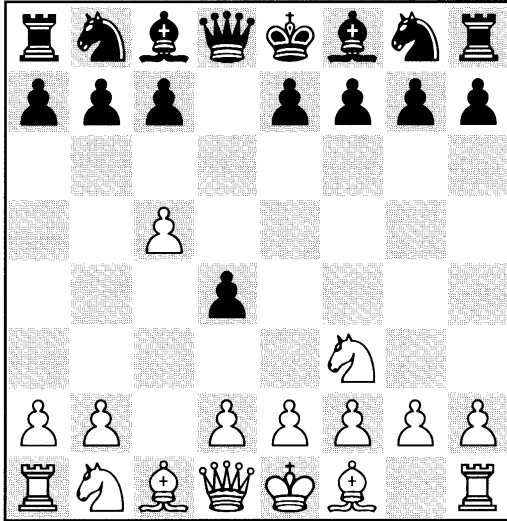
The general impression from this game is that although the normal result should have been a draw, Black was the side fighting for it. The variation from the last game represents in my opinion the best way for Black to

meet 6.♗g5, which actually means that 6.♗g5 certainly deserves more attention from White players. Indeed, not all your opponents will be willing to play a positional pawn sacrifice right from the very beginning of the game. Thus, in practice, you may well encounter some of the other, less promising, lines for Black.

## CHAPTER 15

*Mihai Grünberg*

# It is Better Playing White



NIC KEY RE 13.1

1. ♘f3 d5 2. c4 d4 3. c5!?

### 1. ♘f3 d5 2. c4 d4 3. c5!?

The story of this variation is quite simple. It was born out of a natural desire to play something new. Something that had not been analysed by the theory sharks, who are eager to push their analysis to the 25th move and beyond. In Stefan Bückler's book *Der Geier: Ein Hypermodernes Verteidigungskonzept gegen 1.d4* (Franckh, Stuttgart 1986) I found the following original variation: 1.d4 ♘f6 2. ♘f3 c5 3.d5 c4!?. Bückler called this line the *Habichd* ('gotcha') its main idea being to encircle the d5-pawn to win it later on. I played this line successfully with Black. Later on I decided that it would

be even stronger to play this idea with White!

The idea of playing openings with reverse colours comes from the brilliant Danish grandmaster Bent Larsen. There is a complex and interesting philosophy behind playing lines with the advantage of an extra tempo. Unfortunately, such an approach does not guarantee automatic success. Unless your opponent blindly plays the main line as he would play with reversed colours. Be that as it may, the line we will examine here will certainly present your opponent with plenty of practical problems to solve over the board.

□ Mihai Grünberg  
 ■ Cristian Popescu  
 Romania tt 1998

### 1.♟f3 d5 2.c4 d4 3.c5!?

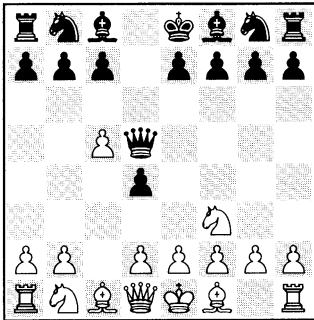
The idea of this move is to block the c5 square for a natural defender of the d4-pawn, and to free the c4-square for the knight or bishop. Approximately the same reasoning lies behind the move 3.b4.

However, in my opinion Black is OK after both 3...c5, and 3...g6 followed by c5. Two examples by Predrag Nikolic from the Bosna tournament:

– 3.b4 c5 4.e3 dxe3 5.fxe3 cxb4 6.d4 g6!? 7.♙d3 ♙g7 8.0-0 ♗h6! 9.♗bd2 0-0 10.♖e2 ♙f5 11.♗e4 ♗c6 12.♙b2 ♖c7 13.h3 e5 ♣ Seirawan-Nikolic Sarajevo 1987.

– 3.b4 g6 4.g3 ♙g7 5.d3 e5 6.♙g2 ♗e7 7.0-0 0-0 8.♗bd2 a5 9.b5 c5! 10.bxc6 ♗exc6 11.♞b1 ♗a6 12.♗e1 ♞e8 13.♗c2 ♗ab4 14.♞b2 ♙f8 15.a3 ♗a6 ♣ Dizdarevic-Nikolic, Sarajevo 1987.

### 3...♖d5

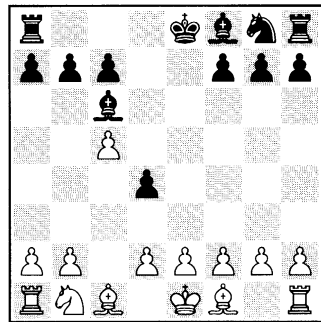


Attacking the c5-pawn and supporting e5. There are plenty of alternatives at this stage:

A) 3...♗a6 4.♖a4+ (4.c6!? ♗c5 5.♖c2 ♖d5 6.b4±) 4...c6 5.♖xd4 ♖xd4 6.♗xd4 ♗xc5 7.♗f3 g6 8.d4 ♗e4 9.♗c3 ♗gf6 10.♙f4 ♙g7 11.♙e5 0-0 12.e3 and White is slightly better.

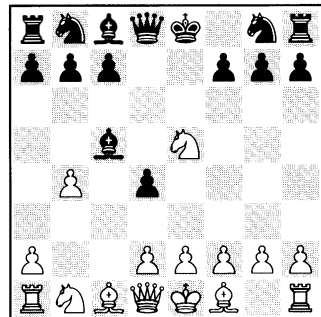
B) 3...c6 4.♖c2! ♖d5 5.e3 (5.e4!? dxe3ep 6.fxe3 ♙f5 7.d3 ♙g4 8.♗bd2 and White is slightly better) 5...♙f5 (5...e5 6.b4±) 6.♖c4 d3 (6...dxe3 7.fxe3 ♗f6 8.♗c3 ♖xc4 9.♙xc4 e6 10.d4 with equal play) 7.♖b4! ♗d7 (7...♖d7 8.♗e5 ♖c7 9.♙xd3±) 8.♖xb7 ♞b8 9.♖xa7 e5 10.♗c3 ♖xc5 11.♖xc5 ♙xc5 12.♗h4 with a winning position.

C) 3...♗c6 4.♖a4 ♙d7!? (4...♖d5 transposes to the main line) 5.♗xd4 e5 6.♗xc6 ♙xc6 7.♖c4 ♖d4 8.♖xd4 exd4

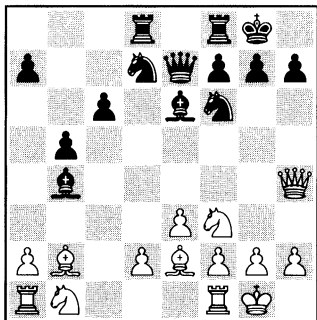


9.b4 a5 10.♙b2 axb4 11.♙xd4 ♗h6 12.a3 bxa3 13.♞xa3 ♞xa3 14.♗xa3 ♗f5 15.e3 ♗xd4 16.exd4= b6 17.♗c4 bxc5 18.♗e5 ♙d5 19.♙b5+ ♗e7 20.dxc5 ♗e6 21.♗d3.

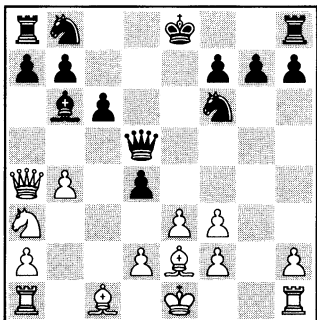
D) 3...e5! 4.♗xe5 ♙xc5 5.b4! (5.♖a4+ ♗d7 6.e3 ♗f6 ♣ is less promising for White) when Black has a choice:



D1) 5...♙e7 6.♖a4+ c6 7.♗b2 ♘f6  
8.♘f3 b5 9.♗b3 ♙e6 10.♗d3 ♙xb4  
11.♗xd4 ♗e7 12.♗h4 ♘bd7 13.e3 ♗d8  
14.♙e2 0-0 15.0-0, with equality.



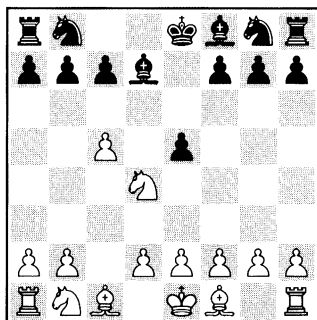
D2) 5...♗b6 6.♖a4+ (6.♘c4? ♘f6 7.♗b2  
0-0 8.a3 ♙e6 9.♘xb6 axb6±; 6.a4!?) 6...c6  
(6...♘d7 7.e3 ♘f6 8.♗b2 0-0 9.♘f3 ♗e8  
10.♙e2 ♘e5 11.♘xd4 ♙g4 12.♘f3 ♙xf3  
13.gxf3±) 7.♘f3 ♙g4 (7...♘f6 8.♘a3 0-0  
9.e3 ♙g4 10.♙e2 ♘bd7 11.♘c4 ♗e8  
12.♗b2∞) 8.♘a3 ♘f6 9.e3 ♙xf3 10.gxf3  
♗d5 11.♙e2



And now 11...♘bd7 12.♗b3 with equal play,  
or 11...♘g4 12.♘c4 ♙c7 13.e4 ♗d8 14.fxg4  
d3 15.♗b2 dxe2 16.♗c2, unclear.

**4.♖a4+ ♘c6**

4...♙d7! (perhaps the move which solves  
Black's problems in this variation) 5.♗xd4  
♗xd4 6.♘xd4 e5



A) 7.♘c2 ♙xc5 8.b4 ♙d6 9.♘c3 ♘f6  
10.a3 c6 11.g3 a5 12.bxa5 ♘a6 13.♘a4, with  
compensation.

B) 7.♘b3 ♘a6 (7...a5!) 8.d4 exd4 9.e3  
♘xc5 10.♘xd4 ♘f6 11.♘c3 0-0-0 12.♙c4  
♘fe4, unclear.

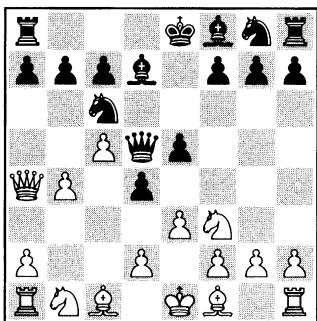
C) 7.♘f3 ♘c6 8.♘c3 ♙xc5 9.d3 ♘ge7  
10.♙d2 f6 11.♗c1, with equality.

**5.b4 e5**

The most natural move, 5...♙g4 6.♘a3 e5  
7.h3 (7.♘b5!? cutting off the option to castle  
queenside, also deserves attention) 7...♙xf3  
(7...♙h5 8.g4 ♙g6 9.♙g2∞) 8.exf3! with a  
good game for White after ♙c4, 0-0, f4.

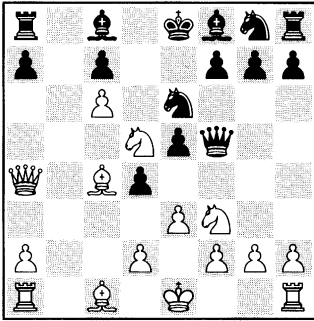
**6.e3 ♙d7**

Inferior is 6...a6?! 7.b5 ♗xc5 8.♙a3 ♘b4  
9.bxa6+ c6 10.♗xb4 ♗xb4 11.♙xb4 ♙xb4  
12.♘xe5±; 6...♙g4 7.♙e2 ♙xf3 (7...0-0-0  
8.♙b2) 8.♙xf3 e4 9.♙e2 d3 10.♙d1 planning  
0-0, f3, ♙b2, and White has a good game.



**7.b5 ♖xc5**

7...♘d8?! 8.♙c4 ♖e4 9.♗c3! ♜f5  
 (9...dxc3?? 10.♙xf7+ ♘xf7 11.♚xe4+)  
 10.♗d5 ♗e6 11.c6 bxc6 12.bxc6 ♙c8



13.0-0 dxe3? (13...♗e7 14.exd4 ♘xd5  
 15.♙xd5 exd4 16.♙xe6+)  
 14.fxe3 ♙d6 15.♙a3 ♙xa3 16.♗d4!  
 ♚xf1+ 17.♚xf1 ♙d6 18.♗b5 ♗e7  
 19.♘d6+ cxd6 20.♗b6 1-0  
 Grünberg-Rahman, Cairo 2000.

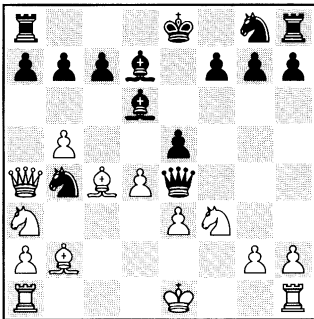
**8.♗a3!**

Moving the knight to the edge is stronger than  
 8.♙b2 dxe3 9.bxc6 ♙xc6 10.d4 exf2+  
 11.♚xf2 ♙xa4 12.dxc5 ♙xc5+ 13.♚e1 f6∞.

**8...♗b4**

Here 8...♚b4 is met by 9.♚c2. Alternatively,  
 8...e4 leads to an interesting position after  
 9.bxc6 ♙xc6 10.♙b5 exf3 11.♙xc6+ ♚xc6  
 12.♚xc6+ bxc6 13.gxf3∞.

**9.♙b2 dxe3 10.fxe3 ♙d6 11.d4 ♚d5  
 12.♙c4 ♚e4**



White has won some useful tempi to develop. Now, however, the queen appears to have taken up a threatening position. White's next move demonstrates that the first player is still in control.

**13.0-0-0! ♗h6**

13...♚xe3+ 14.♚b1 e4 15.♚he1 ♚f4  
 16.♗e5±.

**14.♚he1 0-0 15.♚b3 exd4**

Or 15...♙g4 16.dxe5 ♙c5 17.♙d4 ♙e7±.

**16.♚xd4 ♚e7**

Stronger is 16...♚g6 17.♚xd6 ♗xa2+!  
 (17...♚xd6?! 18.♚c3 ♗f5 19.♚d1 ♚e7  
 20.e4+)  
 18.♚xa2 cxd6∞.

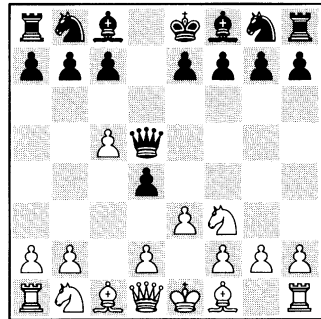
**17.♚c3 ♗f5 18.♚g4**

Black resigned.

When the joy of this victory had subsided, I remained worried because of the variation starting with 4...♙d7, which seems to solve all problems for Black.

Trying to improve the variation I have found a line which in my opinion leads to a complicated fight still offering White good chances. So at the fourth move there could follow instead of 4.♚a4+,

**4.e3!?**



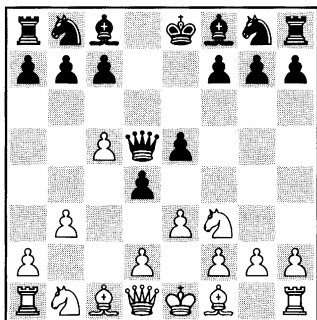
This leaves Black the following options:

A) 4...dxe3 5.fxe3 ♚xc5 6.d4 ♚h5  
 7.♗c3 ♗f6 8.e4 c6 9.♙e2 with a strong initiative for the pawn.



B) 4...♘c6 5.exd4 ♘xd4 6.♖a4+ ♘c6 7.d4 and White has the advantage.

C) 4...e5 and now the strange move 5.b3!?



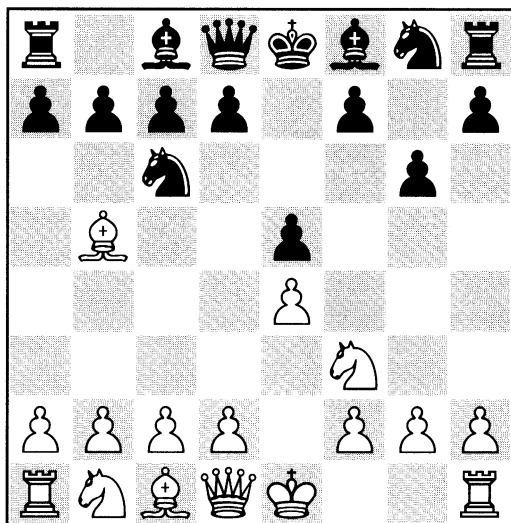
C1) 5...♙xc5 6.♙c4 ♖d6 7.♗g5 ♖h6 8.♗e4 ♗e7 9.♗xc5 ♗xc5 10.♙a3 offering nice prospects to White.

C2) 5...♗xc5 6.♙a3, followed by ♙xf8, leading to an unbalanced and complicated position where White has good chances. The conclusion would be that 4.♖a4 is the right reply to the move order 3...♘c6 and 4...♗d5. When Black plays 3...♗d5 the reaction 4.e3 is more promising. Of course it is difficult to draw a final conclusion, as long as there have been no top grandmasters who have employed this variation. Anyhow it is clear that this SOS line leaves a lot of room for improvising, personal analysis, and stands for a genuine confrontation of ideas.

## CHAPTER 16

*Glenn Flear*

# The Solid but Tricky Fianchetto Spanish



NIC KEY RL 3.1

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 g6!?

One of the best qualities of the regular Spanish is its solidity. Classical development plus a strong point on e5 give Black a solid game, even if White has more options.

One of the downsides is that White can meet 3...a6 with 4.♙xc6. The Exchange Variation is acknowledged by most as pretty dull and against sensible White play it's hard for Black to generate winning chances. Of course 4.♙a4 is more popular, but navigating all that theory can be hard work and even then getting full equality is no easy matter.

An interesting try for Black is 3...g6!? where Black threatens to develop his king's bishop to g7. In a number of lines where ♙xc6 gets

played Black gets a more dynamic game than in analogous positions from the pure-exchange variations.

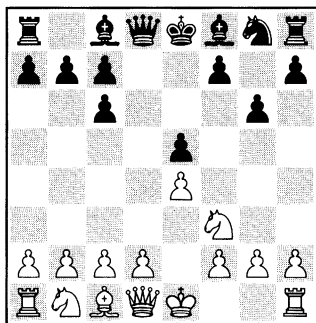
To hope to punish his opponent White would really like to play more vigorously in the centre before Black can complete his development. With this in mind the sharper lines with 4.d4 are critical and sometimes dangerous... but for both players!

In my opinion, Black's 'Fianchetto Spanish' sets White new problems and it's not that easy for him to get anything concrete out of the opening. Perhaps the best try after 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 g6 is to play 4.c3 a6 5.♙c4! with some chances for White to obtain typical Spanish-pressure.

Play through the following lines and see if you can be tempted to put your king's bishop on g7!

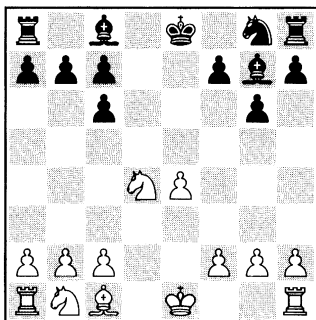
- Yakov Geller
  - Evgenia Ovod
- Novaya Ladoga 2001

1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 g6 4.♙xc6 dxc6



**5.d3**

Just like in the regular Exchange Variation White should not take on e5 (because of 5...♞d4). Likewise, nothing is gained by immediately creating the kingside majority with 5.d4. After 5...exd4 6.♞xd4 ♞xd4 7.♟xd4 ♙g7



the bishop is nicely placed and Black has an

easier game than in many lines of the Exchange Variation. 8.♞b3 (or 8.♞e2 ♙d7 9.♞bc3 0-0-0 10.♙e3 f5= 11.0-0-0, 1/2-1/2 Komliakov-Malaniuk, Krasnodar 2001)

A) A simple way to develop harmoniously is 8...b6 9.c3 (White presumably didn't like the idea of 9.♞c3 being met by 9...♙xc3+!?) 9...♙b7 10.♙f4 0-0-0 11.♞d1d2 ♟f6 12.f3 ♟d7 13.♞d1 ♟e5, Bazan-Soppe, La Falda 1977.

B) 8...♟f6 9.♞c3 ♟d7!? (also interesting is 9...0-0 10.f3 ♟e8 11.♙d2 ♟d6 and the c4-square is beckoning) 10.♙d2 (10.♙f4 ♟e5 11.0-0-0 0-0 12.f3 b6 leaves Black solid and the knight on e5 is nicely installed) 10...a5 11.a4 ♞b6!? 12.♟d1?! (too passive – instead, 12.♙f4! is best) 12...♟c4 13.♙c1 f5 and Black was already better in Kerkay-Lein, St Paul 2000.

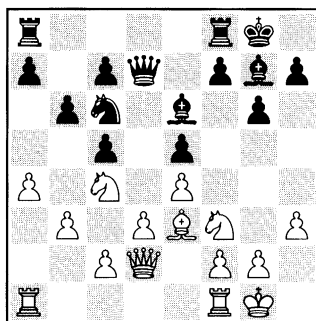
**5...♙g7 6.0-0**

The immediate 6.♞bd2 doesn't give Black time to get his knight to c6. However, after 6...♟h6 7.♟c4 f6 8.♞e2 0-0 9.h4 ♙e6 10.h5 g5 11.♟e3 ♞e8 12.♟h2 ♞d7 13.♙d2 ♙f8 14.♞f3 ♟g7 15.a3 ♙c5 16.♞d1 ♞ad8, Vasiukov-Mi.Tseitlin, Budapest 1989, Black had a dynamic position.

**6...c5 7.♞bd2 ♟e7 8.♟c4 ♟c6**

Black already has comfortable development.

9.a4 0-0 10.h3 ♙e6 11.♙e3 b6 12.♞d2 ♞d7 13.b3



**13...f5!**

Taking the initiative.

**14.exf5 gxf5 15.♖h6 f4 16.♙xg7 ♗xg7 17.♗h2 ♙d5 18.♚e2?**

Here 18.♖g1 holds things together for the moment, but after 18...♞ae8 19.♞ae1 ♞e6 Black has pressure.

**18...♗d4! 19.♚xe5 ♙xf3 20.♚xg7+ ♗xg7 21.gxf3 ♗xc2 22.♖g1+ ♗h8 23.♞ac1 ♗d4**

And White's pawns are a total shambles.

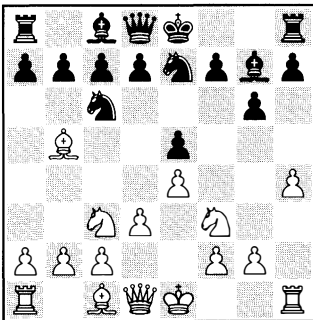
**24.♖g4 ♞ae8 25.a5 ♗xb3 26.♞b1 ♗d4 27.axb6 axb6 28.♞a1 ♗xf3+ 29.♗g2 ♗e1+ 30.♗f1 ♗xd3 31.♞a7 ♞e1+ 32.♗g2 f3+ 33.♗h2 ♗xf2 34.♞h4 ♖g8 0-1**

□ José Capablanca

■ W. Cole

London simul 1913

**1.e4 e5 2.♗f3 ♗c6 3.♙b5 g6 4.♗c3 ♙g7 5.d3 ♗ge7 6.h4!?**



A typical reaction for some folk against fianchetto-developments.

**6...d5!**

Central action is the right answer!

**6...♗d4 7.h5 c6 8.♙a4 d6 9.♙g5 h6 10.♙xe7 ♚xe7 11.hxg6 fxg6 12.♗xd4 exd4 13.♗e2**

**♚g5 14.♚d2** turned out in White's favour in Conlon-Trent, Scarborough 2001.

**7.exd5**

Pushing the h-pawn – 7.h5 – is well-met by 7...♙g4!?

**7...♗xd5 8.♙g5 f6 9.♙d2 ♗xc3 10.bxc3 ♙d7 11.h5 ♗e7 12.♙c4**

Otherwise 12.♙xd7+ ♚xd7 13.h6 ♙f8 14.♞b1 0-0-0 is fine for Black. Note that the h6-pawn is in danger of eventually being rounded up.

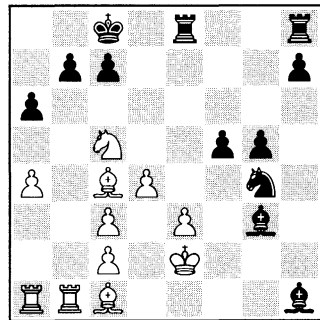
**12...♙c6 13.♚e2 ♚d6 14.a4 0-0-0 15.h6 ♙f8 16.0-0 ♗f5 17.♞fb1 ♗xh6**

The great Capablanca can't find any compensation.

**18.♙e3 a6 19.d4 e4 20.♗d2 f5 21.g3 ♗g4 22.♙f4 ♚f6 23.♗b3 g5!**

Mr Cole's technique is convincing and he now wins without any problems.

**24.♙c1 ♞e8 25.♗f1 ♚h6 26.♗e1 ♚h1+ 27.♚f1 e3 28.fxe3 ♙d6 29.♚xh1 ♙xg3+ 30.♗e2 ♙xh1 31.♗c5**



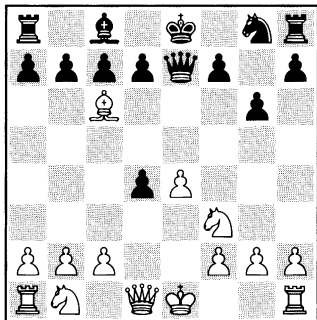
**31...f4!**

The big f-pawn is more important than the exchange.

**32.♙e6+ ♞xe6 33.♗xe6 f3+ 34.♗d3 ♗f2+ 35.♗c4 ♗e4 36.♗d3 f2 37.♙a3 ♙g2 38.d5 h5 39.♙e7 ♖g8 40.c4 ♙e5 41.♗d4 ♙xd4 42.♗xd4 ♗d2 43.♞d1 f1♚ 44.♞xf1 ♗xf1 45.e4 h4 0-1**

□ Anna Zozulia  
 ■ Julian Radulski  
 Marseille 2004

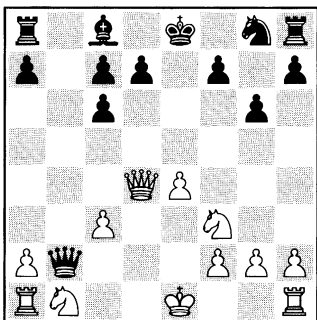
1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 g6 4.d4  
 exd4 5.♙g5 ♙e7 6.♙xe7 ♚xe7  
 7.♙xc6



7...♚b4+!

The main line continues 7...dxc6 8.♚xd4 ♘f6 9.♘c3 ♙g4 10.♘d2 c5 with a reasonable game, but the text is more ambitious.

8.c3 ♚xb2 9.♚xd4 bxc6!



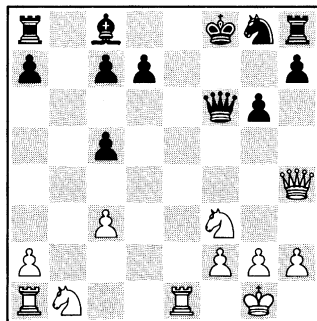
Far stronger than 9...♚xa1? as after 10.0-0 f6 11.e5 dxc6 12.exf6 White has a killing attack.

10.0-0

10.♚xh8?? gets mated after 10...♚c1+ 11.♙e2 ♙a6+ 12.c4 ♙xc4 mate.

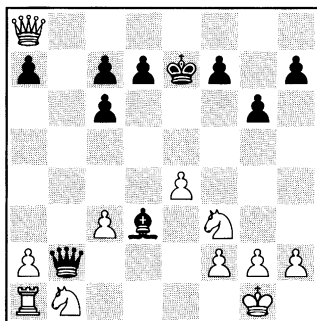
10...♙a6

Also worthy of further tests is 10...f6, e.g. 11.e5 (if 11.♘bd2 then 11...♚b6) 11...♚b6 12.♚h4 c5 13.exf6 ♙f8 14.♙e1 ♚xf6



15.♚c4 (after 15.♚e4 ♚b8 16.♚e8+ ♙g7 17.♘bd2 Black simply develops with 17...♘h6) 15...d6 16.♘bd2 ♙f5 17.♙e3 ♙e8 18.♙xe8+ ♙xe8 19.♚a4+ ♙d8 20.♙e1 ♘e7 21.c4 g5 22.♘b3 ♙f8 23.♚xa7 g4 Szewczyk-Ziemacki, cr 1998, and Black was on top.

11.♚xh8 ♙xf1 12.♚xg8+ ♙e7  
 13.♚xa8 ♙d3



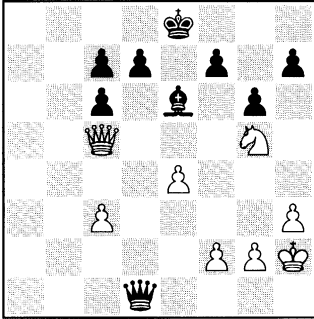
Black has a rook and piece less, but because of White's back-rank weakness he wins all the material back and even comes out a pawn up.

14.h3 ♚xa1 15.♚xa7 ♙xb1 16.♚d4

♙xa2+ 17.♖h2 ♙e6

The Black queen is out of play, so White should use her extra time to win back the pawn and just about equalize. Nevertheless Black's opening idea has been a clear success.

18.♞c5+ ♖e8 19.♘g5 ♞d1



20.e5?

After 20.♘h7 ♞d6+ 21.♞xd6 cxd6 22.♘g5 ♙c4 the advantage of bishop over knight is rather nominal and a draw seems likely.

20...♞d5 21.♞e3 h5 22.♘h7 ♖d8 23.♘f6 ♞a5 24.♞d4 ♖c8 25.f4 ♞a2 26.♞c5 ♙d5 27.♞f8+ ♖b7 28.♞b4+ ♖a6!

Hiding from checks and forcing a very promising queen ending.

29.♘d5 ♞xd5 30.♞a4+ ♖b7 31.♞b4+ ♞b5 32.♞e7 ♞c4 33.g3

33.♞xd7 is also hopeless after 33...♞xf4+ 34.♖h1 ♞c1+ 35.♖h2 ♞xc3 36.♞xf7 ♞xe5+ 37.♖h1 ♞e1+ 38.♖h2 ♞b1 and the forward c-pawn is ready to advance.

33...♞e2+ 34.♖g1 ♞d1+ 35.♖h2 ♞d2+ 36.♖h1 ♞d5+ 37.♖h2 c5 38.c4 ♞d2+ 39.♖h1 ♞e1+ 40.♖g2 ♞e2+ 41.♖g1 ♞xc4 42.♖h2

Or 42.♞xd7 ♞d4+.

42...♞a2+ 43.♖g1 ♞d5 44.♖f2 c4 45.♞b4+ ♖c6 46.♞a4+ ♖b6

47.♞b4+ ♞b5 48.♞d2 c3 0-1  
White resigned as 49.♞xc3 is met by 49...♞c5+.

□ Devaki Prasad

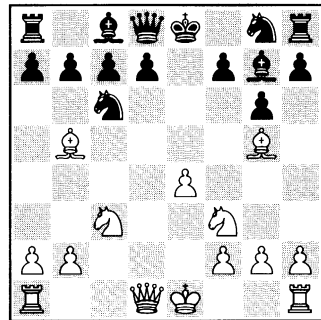
■ Vasily Smyslov

Calcutta 1995

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 g6 4.d4 exd4 5.c3

A dangerous Gambit line recommended by Khalifman. However, if Black is prepared he can obtain a good position, read on...

5...dxc3 6.♘xc3 ♙g7 7.♙g5

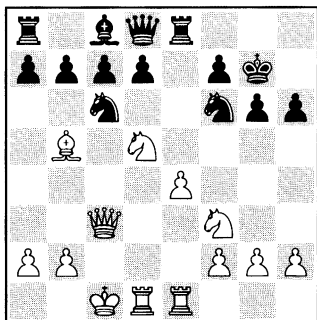


7...f6?!

Black does best to avoid this move. Instead, moving either knight to e7 is playable, e.g. 7...♘ce7 8.0-0 (as this doesn't seem very effective perhaps White should consider 8.♙a4!?) or 8.♞d2) 8...h6 9.♙h4 g5 (also possible is 9...c6 10.♙e2 g5 11.♙g3 d5) 10.♙g3 ♘f6 (10...c6!?) 11.h4 g4 12.♘d4 0-0?! (I prefer 12...a6 13.♙e2 d6) 13.e5 ♘h5 14.♞xg4 ♘xg3 15.♞xg3 d6 16.exd6 ♞xd6 17.♞xd6 cxd6 18.♞ad1 ♘g6 with equal chances, Kalygin-Romanov, Tula 2003.

Or 7...♘ge7 8.♘d5 h6 9.♙f6 ♙xf6 10.♘xf6+ ♖f8 11.♞d2 (threatening to come to c3 with a decisive effect, so Black must do something about the intrusive knight) 11...♘g8! 12.♘d5 (naturally White tries to

keep the pressure on) 12...♘f6 13.♖c3 ♘g7  
14.0-0-0 ♚e8 15.♞he1



White has a lead in development and an annoying pin for the pawn, but Black can escape with my suggestion 15...d6! 16.♙xc6 (16.e5 can be diffused safely with 16...♘xd5 17.♞xd5 ♘g8) 16...bxc6 17.♖xc6 (17.♘f4 also requires the calm retreat 17...♘g8oo) 17...♙e6 with a comfortable game.

Khalifman's analysis continues with the inferior 15...a6 16.♙xc6 (16.♙c4 doesn't impress after 16...d6) 16...bxc6 17.♘b4 ♙b7 18.♘e5 d6 19.♘exc6 ♙xc6 20.♘xc6 ♖c8 21.h3! ♗e6 22.b3 ♘h7 23.e5±. But if Black has to give the pawn back anyway, he should at least find a more opportune moment!

**8.♘f4 ♘e5**

After 8...♘ge7 9.♖b3 a6 10.♙e2 d6 11.0-0 ♘d7 12.♞ac1 ♖c8 13.♞fd1 Har Zvi-Ballon, Agios Nikolaos 1995, White had strong pressure for the pawn.

**9.♘d4?!**

Black's idea can be shown to be suspicious after 9.♖d4! ♘xf3+ 10.gxf3 ♘e7 11.♙a4 ♘c6 (11...a6!? 12.♖c5!) 12.♖c4 a6 13.♘d5 b5 14.♖c3 ♞a7 15.♙b3 ♘e5 (15...♞b7 16.♞c1) 16.♙e3 ♞b7 17.f4 ♘g4 18.♙d4 c6 19.♞c1 with the initiative, Khalifman.

**9...c6 10.♙e2 ♘e7 11.h4 h5**

Black halts the advance of the h-pawn.

**12.♖d2 d5**

Now is the right time to strike in the centre.  
**13.0-0-0 0-0 14.♘b3 b5! 15.exd5 b4**  
**16.♘a4 cxd5**  
and Black was on top.

□ **Andreas Dückstein**

■ **Vasily Smyslov**

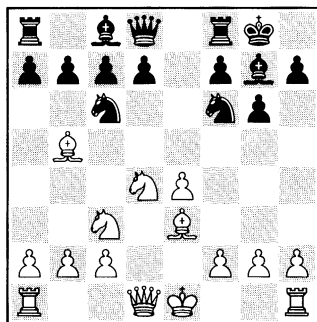
Bad Wörishofen 1991

**1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 g6 4.d4 exd4 5.♘xd4**

This is analogous to Larsen's line of the Philidor (1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 exd4 4.♘xd4 g6) or a line of the Three Knights (1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♘c3 g6 4.d4 exd4 5.♘xd4). In comparison, Black has a good version of these in that:

1. He hasn't committed himself to ...d6.
2. The bishop on b5 isn't so great.
3. White doesn't have time for the 'Yugoslav Attack' (f3, ♙e3, ♖d2, long castling and h2-h4) because Black reacts quickly in the centre with ...d5. Black easily equalizes in the following sample lines.

**5...♙g7 6.♙e3 ♘f6 7.♘c3 0-0**



**8.f3**

Clearly, 8.0-0 can be met by 8...♘g4!, for instance, 9.♖xg4 ♘xd4 10.♙d3 d5! (or 10...d6 11.♖d1 ♘e6 12.♙c4 ♞e8 13.♞e1 ♙d7 14.♖d2 ♘c6 15.♙d5 ♖d7 16.♞ad1

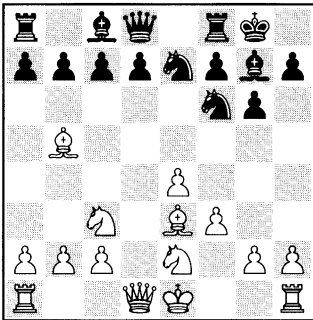
♠ad8 Velikhanli-Mamedov, Abu Dhabi 2001, and Black has a satisfactory game) 11.♖g5 dxe4 12.♗xe4 ♕f5 13.♠ad1 h6 14.♗xd8 ♠axd8 15.c3 ♜fe8 16.f3 ♗c6 17.♕f4 ♗e5 with full equality, Belov-Vul, Tula 2000.

**8...♗e7**

Black prepares to hit back with ...d5.

**9.♗de2**

Christensen-Beliavsky, Copenhagen 2003, went: 9.♗d2 d5! 10.e5 ♗d7 11.e6 ♗e5 12.exf7+ ♗xf7 13.♗b3 c6 14.♕e2 ♗f5, and Beliavsky had already grasped the initiative.



**9...d5!**

It's clear that hitting back at the centre with a quick ...d5 is Black's right idea. Preparing this with the preliminary 9...c6 also seems effective e.g. 9...c6 10.♕c4 d5! (better than the over-enthusiastic 10...b5?! 11.♕b3 b4 12.♗a4 d5 13.0-0 ♖c7 Braslavsky-Krstic, Salzburg 2003, because Black has unnecessarily loosened his queenside structure) 11.exd5 ♗fxd5 12.♕xd5 cxd5 13.♗d2 ♗f5 14.♕c5 ♜e8 15.0-0 d4, Vartapetyan-Kobalia, Herculane 1994, and Black was already better.

**10.exd5 ♗fxd5 11.♕g5**

After 11.♕c5 Black can sacrifice the exchange for dark-squared dominance, e.g. 11...c6 12.♗xd5 ♗xd5 13.♕xf8? ♕xf8

14.♕d3 (14.♗c3? ♖e7+ 15.♕e2 ♗e3 with a vicious attack) 14...♗e3 15.♗d2 ♗xg2+ and Black is much better. White's rooks are not much help in stemming Black's strong initiative, e.g. 16.♗f2 ♖h4+! 17.♗g3 (17.♗xg2 ♕h3+ 18.♗g1 ♕c5+) 17...♕h3 with a winning attack.

**11...c6 12.♗xd5 cxd5 13.c3 ♗d6**

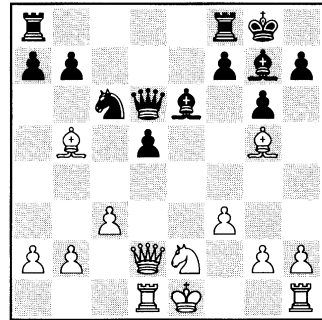
The isolated pawn is not a significant problem. White has problems to complete development and so has little hope of putting any pressure on Black's centre.

**14.♗d2**

Taking a hot pawn with 14.♕xe7 ♖xe7 15.♗xd5 is dodgy because of the exposed dark squares.

Furthermore Black has at least 15...♠d8 16.♖e4 ♖g5 winning back the pawn and perhaps more.

**14...♗c6 15.♠d1 ♕e6**



**16.♗d4?**

16.♕h6 playing for equality would have been better.

**16...♗xd4 17.cxd4 ♜fc8 18.♕e3**

18.0-0 ♖b6 19.♕e2 ♕f5 also leaves White on the defensive.

**18...♖b6 19.♕a4 ♜c4! 20.b3**

If 20.♕b3 then 20...♠b4 21.0-0 a5 and ...a4 is coming.

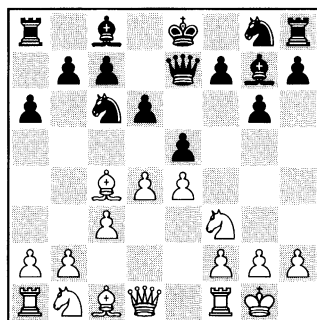
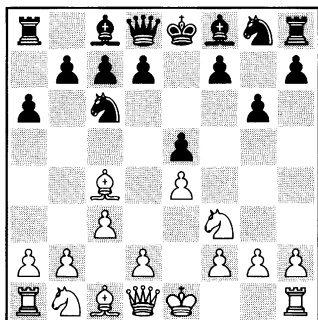
**20...♜c7 21.0-0 ♠ac8**

With a clear advantage to Black.



□ Victor Bologan  
 ■ Vladimir Akopian  
 Moscow 2002

1.e4 e5 2.♗f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 g6 4.c3 a6  
 5.♙c4!



This could be White's best chance to keep something out of the opening.

**5...d6 6.d4 ♖e7**

This bolsters the e5-point. The immediate 6...♙g7 often transposes. After 6...♙g7 White can try 7.♙g5 to try and disrupt normal black development:

● 7...f6 is a slight concession but Black can still manoeuvre to equality e.g. 8.♙h4 ♘h6 9.dxe5 dxe5 10.♗bd2 ♗e7 11.0-0 ♘f7 12.b4 ♘cd8 13.♘e1 ♙e6 14.♘c2 ♘d6 15.♙xe6 ♘xe6 16.♘e3 0-0 17.♗b3 ♘h8 Magem Badals-Anic, France 2001.

● Even 7...♘f6! is playable as after 8.dxe5 dxe5 9.♗xd8+ ♘xd8 10.♘xe5 ♘xe4 11.♙xd8 Black equalizes with 11...♙xe5.

● 7...♗d7!? 8.0-0 h6 9.♙h4 ♘f6 10.♙e1 0-0 11.♗bd2 ♙e8 12.a4 b6 13.♙f1 ♙b7 with just a minimal advantage to White (space, flexible position etc.) Lobron-Salov, Wijk aan Zee 1993, but Black's position is hardly worse than that in most other Spanish variations.

**7.0-0 ♙g7**

**8.dxe5**

White opens the a3-f8 diagonal for his bishop. 8.d5 (blocking the centre immediately releases the pressure) 8...♘d8 9.♘a3 f5!? 10.exf5 gxf5 11.♙e1 ♘f6 12.♙g5 ♘f7 13.♙h4 0-0∞, Computer XBP-Martinovsky, Chicago 1994.

The most challenging is 8.h3! where White retains the tension:

A) 8...♘f6 9.♙e1 0-0 10.♙g5 h6 11.♙h4 g5 (11...♗e8?! 12.♗bd2 ♘h5 13.♘f1 ♘f4 14.♘e3 with a pleasant edge to White, Shirov-Giorgadze, Barcelona 2000) 12.♙g3 ♘h5 13.♘xe5 dxe5 14.♗xh5 exd4 15.♙d5 with a complicated struggle favouring White slightly, Rytshagov-Vetemaa, Tallinn 1997.

B) 8...h6 9.♙e3 ♘f6 10.♗bd2 0-0 11.♙e1 ♘h8 12.a4 b6 13.♗c1 ♙d7 14.♙f1 ♘g8 15.dxe5 dxe5 16.♘c4 a5 17.b3, Lanka-Kortchnoi, Debrecen 1992, with a small edge for White.

**8...♘xe5**

Also playable is 8...dxe5!? 9.b3 ♙e6, and now:

A) 10.♙a3 ♗d7 (10...♗f6! 11.♙xe6 ♗xe6 12.♗d5 ♗f6 yields nothing tangible for White) 11.♗bd2 ♘g7 12.♘g5 ♙xc4 13.♘xc4 h6 14.♗xd7+ ♘xd7 15.♙ad1+ ♘e8 16.♘f3 f6 favoured White slightly in Cs.Horvath-Bellini, Arnhem 1987.

B) 10.♗e2 ♙d8 11.♗bd2 (11.♙a3 is logical but not dangerous after 11...♙xc4

12. ♖xc4 ♗f6 with ... ♘ge7 and 0-0 to follow) 11... ♘f6 12. ♘g5 ♙xc4 13. ♘xc4 ♘h5 14. ♘h3 ♗e6 15. ♙a3 ♙f8 16. ♙xf8 ♗xf8 17. ♘e3 ♘f4 ½-½ Varavin-Mukhametov, Novosibirsk 1989.

**9. ♘xe5 dxe5 10. b3 ♘f6**

If the note to 8...dxe5 is anything to go by then Black can consider 10... ♙e6! 11. ♙a3 ♗f6 against which I can't see anything to undermine Black's plan of ... ♘e7 followed by 0-0 e.g. 12. ♙xe6 (12. ♗d3 ♗d8; 12. ♘d2 ♘e7) 12... ♗xe6 13. c4 ♘e7 14. ♘c3 ♘c6 (14...c6 yields an edge to White after 15. ♗d6; and worse is 14...0-0? which loses material to 15. ♘d5) 15. ♗d5 (15. ♘d5 0-0-0!?) 15... ♗d8! 16. ♗xe6+ fxe6 with equal chances.

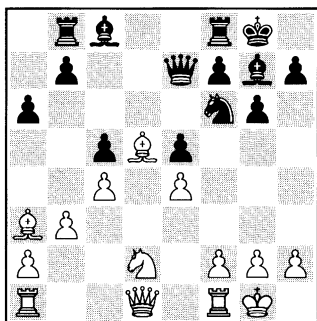
**11. ♙a3 c5 12. ♙d5 0-0 13. c4**

In S. Polgar-Smyslov, Munich 2000, 13. b4?! led to a crushing Black win after 13... ♗d8 14. bxc5 ♘xe4 15. c4 ♗c7 16. ♗e1 ♙f5 17. g4 ♘xf2!.

**13... ♗b8**

Perhaps 13... ♗a7!?.

**14. ♘d2**



**14...b5?!**

More solid is 14...b6! 15. ♗c2 ♘h5 16.g3 ♘h8.

**15. ♗c2 b4 16. ♙b2 ♘h5 17. a3! a5 18. axb4 axb4 19.g3 ♘h8 20. ♗fe1 f5?!**

This essentially helps White but it's hard to

just sit and wait. On the queenside White has the a-file and a target on c5 and the mighty bishop on d5 is a nuisance for Black. So White has the better chances even without this loose move.

**21. exf5 ♙xf5 22. ♗d1 ♙h3 23. ♗e2 ♗be8 24. ♘e4**

It's already hard to find a satisfactory continuation for Black.

**24... ♘f6 25. ♘xf6 ♗xf6 26. f4 ♗f5 27. ♙xe5 ♙xe5 28. fxe5**

And White won easily.

□ **Krysztof Jakubowski**

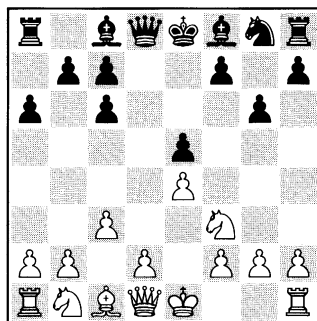
■ **Krysztof Spicak**

Polanczyk 2000

**1. e4 e5 2. ♘f3 ♘c6 3. ♙b5 g6 4. c3 a6 5. ♙xc6**

Another type of exchange variation. The fact that White has already played c2-c3 means that he will have to take into consideration his d3-square.

**5...dxc6**



**6.d4**

The fluid centre doesn't worry the player with the bishop pair.

After 6. ♘xe5 the pawn can be recuperated in two ways 6... ♗g5 (6... ♗e7 7. d4 f6 8. ♘f3 ♗xe4+ 9. ♙e3 ♙d7 10. ♘bd2 ♗f5 11. ♗b3

0-0-0 12.0-0-0 ♖b5 13.♞he1 ♗xb3 14.axb3 b6 15.h3 h5 16.♗e4 ♞h7 and Black had reasonable chances, Della Morte-N.Diaz, Tres de Febrero 2003) 7.d4 ♗xg2 8.♗f3 ♗xf3 9.♗xf3 ♗g7 10.♗f4 ♗g4 11.♗e5 ♗e6 12.♗d2 0-0-0 13.0-0-0 f6 14.♗ec4 ♗h6 15.f3 ♗f7 16.b3 b6 17.♙c2 ♙b7 18.h4 ♗d6 19.♗e3 ♞he8 with balanced chances, Haanpaa-Lehti, Helsinki 2001.

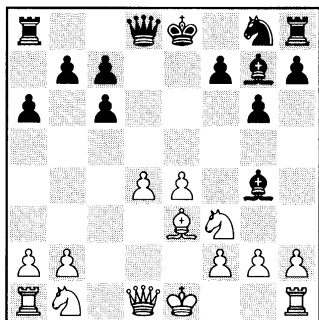
After the alternative 6.0-0 ♗g7 7.d4 (White can't get anything from the routine 7.d3 ♗e7 as Black simply completes development and then makes pressure against d3 a priority) 7...exd4 8.cxd4 ♗e7 9.♗c3 ♗g4 10.♗e3 0-0 11.h3 ♗xf3 12.♗xf3 f5 (the cheeky 12...♗xd4!? is more ambitious) 13.♗g5 ♗d7 Black was OK in Chandler-Spassky, Vienna 1986.

**6...exd4 7.cxd4**

This central pawn structure is prone to attack down the semi-open d and e files as well as along the a1-h8 diagonal.

7.♗xd4 ♗xd4 8.cxd4 (the white centre is ripe for attack) 8...♗g7 9.♗c3 ♗g4 10.♗e3 ♗e7 11.h3 ♗xf3 12.gxf3 0-0-0 13.0-0-0 f5 (Black continues to press against the centre) 14.♗e2 ♞he8 15.♞hg1 ♗f6 16.♗g5 ♗xg5+ 17.♞xg5 ♗d5 18.e5 c5 and Black was on top, Marteau-Anic, Montpellier 2000.

**7...♗g4 8.♗e3 ♗g7**



**9.0-0?**

Necessary was 9.♗bd2.

**9...c5! 10.♗bd2? cxd4 11.♗xd4 ♗xd4!**

And Black is already winning.

**12.♗b3 ♗xb2 13.♗e3 ♗b6 14.♗f4 ♗xf3 15.♞ab1 ♗d6 16.♗xf3 ♗xd2 17.♞xb7 ♗c3 18.♗d1 ♗e7 0-1**

☐ Alexander Khalifman

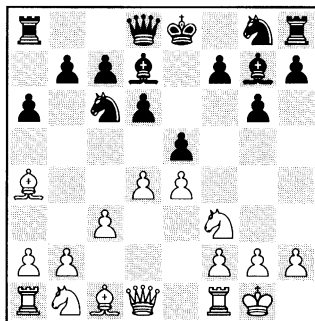
■ Nigel Short

Moscow 2001

**1.e4 e5 2.♗f3 ♗c6 3.♗b5**

Now after 3...g6 4.c3 a6 5.♗a4 d6 6.d4 play transposes to one of the principal lines in the Steinitz Deferred Variation. There follows a summary of how play might develop in this line.

**3...a6 4.♗a4 d6 5.c3 g6 6.d4 ♗d7 7.0-0 ♗g7**



Now White has tried several ideas. The best chance for an advantage is to close the centre, exchange light-squared bishops and play in King's Indian style i.e. A queenside push acknowledging that Black will gain counter-chances with ...f5.

**8.d5**

Let us examine the alternatives:

A) 8.♞e1 ♗ge7

● 9.d5 ♗a5 10.♗xd7+ ♗xd7 11.b3

Anand-Short, Merida 2001, and now Black should continue with Anand's suggested 11...b5! 12.c4 c5! 13.♗d2 ♖b7=. Instead of 11.b3 the game S.Polgar-Kamsky, New Delhi 1990, went 11.♗bd2 b5 12.b4 ♖b7 13.a4 0-0 14.c4 c5 and Black was OK.

● 9.♗e3 0-0 10.♗bd2 (10.d5 ♖a5!) 10...exd4 11.cxd4 d5 12.e5 ♘f5 13.♗f1 ♖xe3 14.♗xe3 ♗e7= Morovic Fernandez-Gluckman, Bled Olympiad 2002.

● 9.dxe5 ♗xe5 10.♗xe5 dxe5 11.♗g5 h6 12.♗e3 ♗xa4 13.♖xa4+ ♗d7 14.♖xd7+ ♗xd7= Bertona-Soppe, Buenos Aires 2000.

B) 8.dxe5 (rather tame) 8...dxe5 (safest but most dull is 8...♗xe5 9.♗xe5 dxe5 10.♗xd7+ ♖xd7 11.♖xd7+ ♗xd7 12.♞d1+ ♗e6= Bryzgalin-Malaniuk, Krasnodar 2001) 9.♗g5 ♗ge7 (9...f6 is also possible) 10.♗bd2 0-0 11.♗b3 ♖e8 12.♗c5 ♗c8 13.b4 f6 14.♗e3 ♗h8 15.♗b3 ♗d8 16.♗d2 f5 with counterplay despite a slightly constricted game Ulibin-Safin, Abu Dhabi 2001.

C) Following 8.♗g5 f6 9.♗e3 ♗h6 10.dxe5 Black can recapture with either pawn to obtain a satisfactory game: 10...dxe5 (or 10...fxe5 11.♗g5 ♖c8 12.♖c1 ♗f7 13.♗e3 0-0 14.b4 ♗fd8 15.♗bd2 ♗e6 Nurkic-Mikhalchishin, Opatija 2003) 11.♗c5 ♗f8 12.♖d5 ♗xc5 13.♖xc5 ♖e7 14.♖xe7+ ♗xe7 15.♗bd2 ♗f7 16.h3 ♗d6 17.♞fd1 ♞hd8 18.♗e1 ♖a5 19.♗xd7 ♞xd7 20.♗f1 ♞ad8 Babaev-Malaniuk, Polanica Zdroj 2001.

D) 8.♗e3 ♗f6 9.♗bd2 0-0 10.d5 (10.dxe5 ♗xe5 11.♗xe5 dxe5 12.f3 ♗xa4 13.♖xa4 ♖d3 gave nothing for White in Topalov-Azmaiparashvili, Madrid 1996) 10...♗e7 11.♗xd7 ♖xd7 12.♗e1 ♗g4 13.♗g5 f5 with adequate counterchances for Black in Ye Jiangchuan-Short, Beijing 2003.

**8...♗ce7 9.♗xd7+**

After 9.c4 Black has

A) 9...b5!/? gaining space on the queensi-

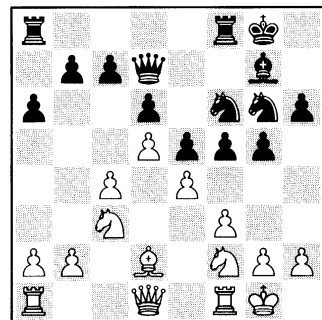
de. Then after 10.cxb5 axb5 11.♗c2 h6 12.b4 ♗f6 13.♗c3 0-0 14.♞e1 ♖b8 15.♗d3 c6 16.dxc6 ♗xc6 17.♖e2 d5 Black was playing for more than equality, Tukhaev-Malaniuk, Simferopol 2003.

B) or following 9...h6 10.♗c3 Black should still continue with 10...f5 as in the main game. Instead, 10...♗f6 is possible but Black is slower getting his kingside play off the ground: 11.♗xd7+ ♖xd7 12.b4 a5 13.♗a3 axb4 14.♗xb4 0-0 15.c5 ♗h5 16.cxd6 cxd6 17.a4 ♞a6 18.♗d2 ♗f4 19.♗b5 f5, Potkin-Kobalia, ICC (Internet) 2003.

**9...♖xd7 10.c4 h6 11.♗c3 f5 12.♗e1**  
In Hamdouchi-Malaniuk, Groningen 1997, Black stood well after 12.exf5 gxf5 13.♗h4 ♗f6! 14.f4 e4 15.♖e1 b5 16.g4 bxc4 17.♗xf5 ♗xf5 18.gxf5 ♖xf5.

**12...♗f6 13.f3 0-0 14.♗d3 g5 15.♗d2**  
Black obtained enough counterplay following 15.exf5 ♗xf5 16.♗f2 ♗d4 17.♗fe4 ♗h5 18.♗e3 ♗f4 19.g3 ♗g6 20.♗g2 ♞f7 in Agnos-Smagin, London 1989.

**15...♗g6 16.♗f2**



Black has made good progress, but there is always a danger that he will miss his light-squared ('good') bishop in the middle-game.

**16...f4 17.b4 ♞f7 18.c5 ♗f8**

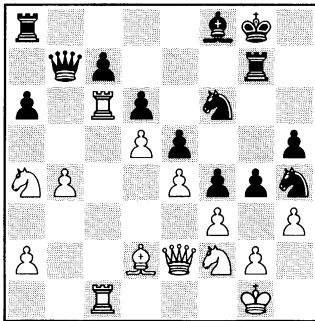
It's reminiscent of a King's Indian. Without

the light-squared bishops Black's kingside attack isn't as dangerous here, but he is at least well-prepared to create chances with ...g4.

**19.♘a4 ♖e8 20.♖c1 h5**

Another idea is 20...c6!? competing directly for influence in the centre.

**21.c6 ♖c8 22.cxb7 ♖xb7 23.♖e2 ♖g7 24.♖c6 ♖a8 25.♖fc1 ♘h4 26.h3 g4**



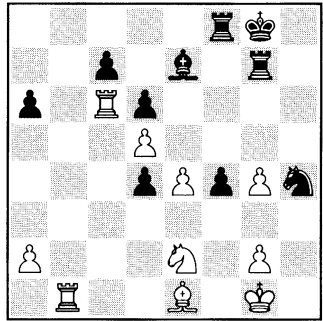
The complications that follow should favour White.

**27.fxg4 hxg4 28.♘xg4 ♘xg4 29.hxg4**

**♖b5 30.♖d1 ♘e7 31.♘e1 ♖f8 32.♘c3**

White is better after 32.♘b2!? intending to meet 32...f3 with 33.♘xh4 ♘xh4 34.gxf3 ♖xb4 35.♘c4.

**32...♖xb4 33.♖b1 ♖d4+ 34.♖xd4 exd4 35.♘e2**

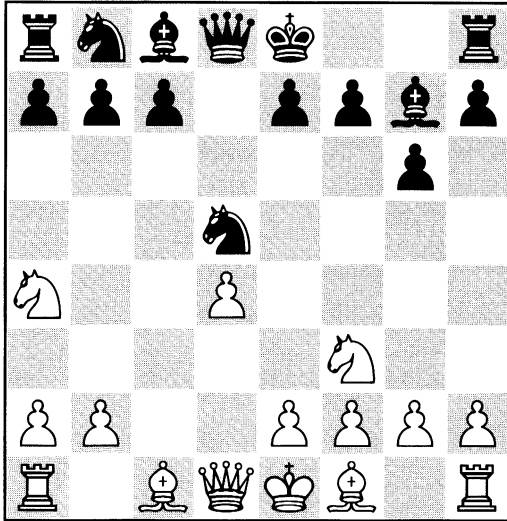


**35...♘xg2!= 36.♘xg2 f3+ 37.♘f1 fxe2+ 38.♘xe2 ♖xg4 39.♖xc7 ♘g5 40.♘d3 ♖f3+ 41.♘c4 ♖xe4 42.♖b8+ ♖f8 43.♖xf8+ ♘xf8 44.♘f2 ♖e2 45.♘xd4 ♖c2+ 46.♘c3 ♖xa2 47.♘b3 ♖e2 48.♖c6** 1/2-1/2

# CHAPTER 17

*Jonathan Rowson*

## The Improved Nadanian



NIC KEY GI 3.4  
and GI 7.2

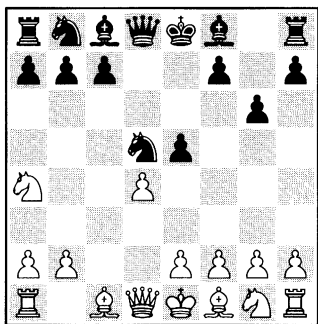
### 6. ♖a4 in the Grünfeld

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 d5 4.cxd5  
♘xd5 5.♘f3 ♗g7 6.♖a4

When Nadanian introduced 5. ♖a4!? a few years ago, I was in the middle of writing my book *Understanding the Grünfeld*. It was clear that this move was just too cool to be ignored, and that unless Black found a clear antidote, it would soon charm its way to popularity. In my book I wrote: 'One good way to look at this move is simply to see it as early prophylaxis. White realizes that Black's main pawn-break is ...c5 and decides to put a stop to it. He also realizes that his extra centre pawn is a long-term asset and is wary of occupying the centre immediately... It's almost like White can't believe his luck at ha-

ving made the exchange of c- for d-pawn and needs a move or two to get over the surprise before there are any further upsets!' Later in the same chapter I added that 'As a general comment, I think it is important not to underestimate the dangers present when White just holds the structure with the pawn on d4 and prevents Black's central breaks. It may seem that Black is in little danger when White has not played e4, but it often turns out that on completing development Black finds it hard to do anything significant while White can use his slightly greater central control to creep around the edges...' Therefore the ♖a4 concept does put some pressure on Black, most of all to find an effective pawn break.

Moreover, a well-prepared White player can find ways to make these pawnbreaks problematic. For these reasons, 5.♘a4 did indeed become quite popular and was even used by Kortchnoi to defeat Sutovsky. However, although many Black players simply played 5...♗g7 and got on with the game, those who studied the line closely came to the conclusion that White had chances for an edge there, but that 5...e5! was a more challenging response.



The challenging 5...e5!

Indeed, I recommended 5...e5 in my book and it now looks like 6.dxe5 ♘c6! (Avrukh/Mikhalevski) poses some questions about White's development to which nobody seems to have found an answer. In chess we often make the mistake of rejecting a promising concept simply because we can't find a way to implement it move by move. This variation is a good example of how a little flexibility can keep a concept alive, with just a slight shift in move order. In this case, White can simply wait a move before playing his knight to the rim, and prevent the ...e5 antidote in the process. The drawback of this approach is that the early commitment of the knight means that White can no longer play f3 and might run into ♗g4 before he is ready for it. Still, there is nothing to make ♘a4 unplayable and I can confidently state that

White is at least not worse in this line. So should Black be scared? I doubt it, but without ... e5, it does mean that he is back to working things out over-the-board and can easily drift into a worse position if he fails to find the right moment for a central pawn break. Thus although this line may not impress the world's elite, it remains an excellent surprise weapon because you can pose your opponent fresh problems with minimal risk. Let's divide the material after 6.♘a4 into the following lines:

- A) Minor Alternatives
- B) 6...♗g4
- C) 6...♘b6
- D) 6...♘f6
- E) 6...0-0
- F) 6...♗f5

### Variation A

The following moves have not been very popular in practice.

- **6...c6.** Solid but a little passive. Putting the knight on c7 raises some interesting possibilities for both sides, but this would not be enough to put me off playing this way with White. After 7.e4 ♘c7 8.♗e3 ♗g4 9.♗e2 ♘e6 10.e5 we have transposed into an analysis by Nadanian. He assesses the position as slightly better for White.
- **6...f5.** There are no games with this dubious move, and I guess White should just continue developing with g3, ♗g2 and 0-0 and then slowly play for e4.
- **6...♘c6.** Nobody has tried this yet, and it is probably too committal, but I'm not totally sure. 7.e4 ♘b6 8.♗b5!? looks better for White, but without practical tests I wouldn't guarantee it.
- **6...♘d7** looks a little passive – White was better in Toth-Gara, Budapest 1998, after 7.e4 ♘5b6 8.♗e3 (or 8.♗e2 0-0 9.0-0 ♘xa4 10.♗xa4 c5. In such lines Black has some

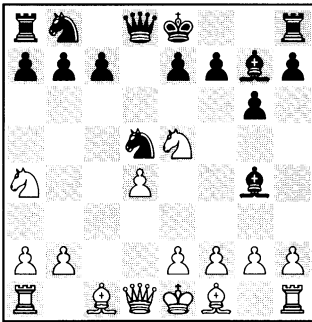
chances of equalizing, but the misplaced knight on d7 also gives White chances to be better) 8...♞xa4 9.♞xa4 0-0 (9...c5 10.♞d1! cxd4 11.♞xd4! ♞xd4 12.♞xd4±) 10.♞e2 (also possible is 10.♞d1!?) 10...♞f6 11.♞c2 ♞g4 12.0-0 (and here 12.♞f4! comes into consideration) 12...♞xe3 13.fxe3 ♞h6 14.♞c3±.

### Variation B

#### 6...♞g4!?

Ambitious and quite critical but unexplored. 7.♞e5 ♞f5! leads to complications that will favour the well-prepared player.

#### 7.♞e5



● 7...♞c8! Rowson. Not sure how good this is, but such cheeky moves have always appealed to me – in this case ♞b4 is something resembling a threat.

● 7...♞f5! Rowson 8.♞c5! (8.e4 ♞xe4 9.♞c5 ♞f6 10.♞a4 ♞f8 11.♞xe4 ♞xe4 12.♞b3 ♞d6 13.♞e2♞; 8.f3 ♞b4! 9.e4 ♞xd4! 10.♞xd4 ♞c2+ 11.♞f2 ♞xd4 12.♞xf7 ♞d7! 13.♞xh8 ♞xa4 14.♞xg6 hxg6 15.b3 ♞d7 16.♞b2 c5 with a big edge for Black) 8...b6 9.♞a4 ♞f8∞. I suspect White has chances to be better here, but I'm not sure exactly how he should go about it. One idea is 10.g4! ♞c8 11.♞e4 and now 11...f6 12.♞d3 ♞xg4 13.♞g2 with a random position – which is what you often get from a

random variation. However, for what its worth, I think White has very good compensation here.

● 7...♞xe5 8.dxe5 ♞b4! Nadianian leaves this with the assessment 'unclear' but my intuition tells me that White should have a way to be better here. 9.♞h6! looks like the best place to start looking for the initiative.

### Variation C

#### 6...♞b6

This is quite sophisticated, White doesn't have to weaken his centre with e4 but perhaps he should, because otherwise it is difficult to prevent both ...c5 and ...e5. Given a certain amount of accuracy this move should not cause any real problems. What follows is a vintage Grünfeld from Jozsef Horvath.

#### 7.♞f4

Also interesting are 7.♞g5! and 7.e4!.

#### 7...0-0 8.♞c1

I like 8.♞e5!?. This is a little hard to believe, but it would bother me if I was Black.

8...♞c6 9.e3 e5! 10.♞g5 ♞d6 11.♞xb6 axb6 12.d5 ♞b4 13.a3 e4! 14.♞d4 ♞xd5

And Black was clearly better in Topakian-J.Horvath, Austria tt 2002/03.

### Variation D

#### 6...♞f6

Single-minded and probably slightly inferior. This prevents e4 but there is more to ♞a4 than that and White retains a space advantage.

#### 7.g3

Here 7.♞f4! might be even more dangerous because it allows White to take control of the c-file more quickly. The game Friedrichs-Van de Mortel, Belgium tt 2000/01, went: 7.♞f4 0-0 8.e3 ♞bd7. And now, instead of the game continuation 9.♞e2, White should have played 9.♞c1! c6



10.♖c3 ♘h5!?! with an unclear game.

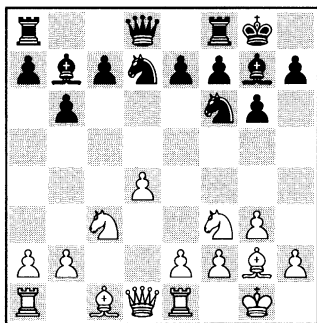
**7...b6**

Browne-Yermolinsky, US Championship, Denver 1998, went 7...♗c6 8.♙f4 ♘d5 9.e3 ♙f5 10.♘h4 ♙d7 11.♗c5 b6 12.♘xd7 ♖xd7 13.♙c1 ♘d8 14.♗f3±.

**8.♙g2 ♙b7 9.0-0 0-0 10.♙e1**

10.♙f4!?

**10...♗bd7 11.♗c3**



**11...♙e8**

The alternative is 11...c5!?! 12.d5 a6:

– 13.a4 b5! 14.axb5 axb5 15.♙xa8 ♖xa8 (15...♙xa8!?) 16.♗xb5 (16.e4 b4 17.♗b5 ♖a5) 16...♗xd5 17.♗c7 ♗xc7 18.♖xd7 ♗d5.

– 13.e4! b5 14.e5 ♗g4 15.♙f4± and it seems that White can keep control of the centre.

**12.e4 e6**

It's not so easy for Black to break free, e.g: 12...c5 13.d5 e6 (13...♗g4!?! 14.♗g5!?!) 14.dxe6 ♙xe6 15.e5 ♗e8 16.♗g5±.

**13.♙b1 ♙b8**

13...c5 14.e5 ♗d5 15.♗e4!.

**14.♙f4 ♗h5 15.♙g5 f6 16.♙e3 ♙f8**

**17.b4± ♖h8 18.g4 ♗g7 19.e5 f5**

**20.♗g5 ♖e7 21.♙xb7 ♙xb7 22.♖f3**

**♙eb8 23.♖h3 h5 24.gxh5 ♗xh5**

**25.♗f3 ♙g7 26.♗h4 ♖f7 27.♗e2**

**♖g8 28.f4 ♗f8 29.♖f2 ♙h8 30.♙g1**

**♖h7 31.♗xg6 ♗xg6 32.♙xg6+**

**♖xg6 33.♙g1 ♖xg1+ 34.♗xg1 ♗g7**  
**35.♗f3 ♖f7 36.♗g5+ ♖e7 37.♖h7**  
**♖d7 38.♗f7 1-0**

Zielinska-Bednarska, Zakopane tt 2000.

### Variation E

**6...0-0**

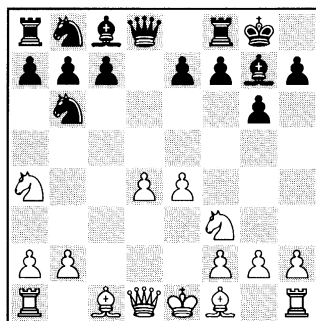
This is the automatic and most popular response. Now, after

**7.e4 ♗b6**

move orders are critical but it is still not totally clear which one is best. Instead of 7...♗b6, Black sometimes plays 7...♗f6.

After 7...♗f6 play might continue: 8.♙d3 ♙g4 (a good alternative is 8...e5 – Rowson) 9.e5 ♗d5 and now 10.0-0? fails to 10...♙xf3 (10...♗c6 11.♙e4) 11.♖xf3 ♗c6 12.♗c5 ♗db4!± Nadanian. However, White has the stronger 10.♙e4!±.

In Kahlbacher-Badstüber, Oberwart 1998, White played 8.♗c3 in reply to 7...♗f6. After 8...c5 9.d5 ♙g4 10.♙e2 a6 11.a4 ♗fd7 12.0-0 White was slightly better. Instead of 11...♗fd7, 11...♗bd7!?! looks better.



As mentioned above, there are several possible move orders. In practice, White has mainly tried:

E1) 8.♙e2

E2) 8.♙e3

There are two interesting alternatives:

### ● 8.♘c5

This looks premature, but it is not so easy to deal with.

### 8...♘6d7 9.♘b3 b6

Interesting is 9...a5!?

And now instead of the game continuation 10.♗d3?!, White should have played 10.♖c2!?, Pazos Gambarrotti-Arias, Mellin 2003.

### ● 8.h3

This might be playable. The advantage of keeping the bishop on c1 is that b2 is protected. I guess Black should try something quite fast.

### 8...♘xa4

Inferior is 8...f5?! 9.♘xb6 axb6 10.♗c4+ ♗h8 11.e5!±. Best is possibly 8...♘c6 9.♗e3 f5!? which looks critical – now Black has an important f5-f4 resource.

### 9.♖xa4 c5 10.dxc5 ♖c7 11.♖a3!

and although this looks like a bit of a dodgy pawn grab, there is no clear refutation in sight.

## Variation E1

### 8.♗e2

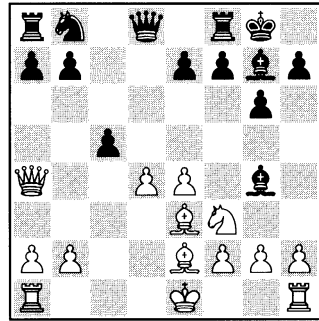
In Nadianian-Pelletier, Cannes 1997, there followed 8...♘xa4 9.♖xa4 b6 10.♗e3! (according to Nadianian 10.0-0?! ♗b7 is equal. Not sure if this is true though, because White can still play 11.♖c2 Rowson) 10...♗b7 11.♖c2± ♘d7 12.♖d1!? (12.0-0) 12...e6 13.0-0 h6?! (13...♖c8 14.♗g5 ♖e8±) 14.♗b5! White intends to play 15.♗c6 and has a pleasant edge.

### 8...♗g4 9.♗e3

This position also arises after 8.♗e3 ♗g4 9.♗e2 – though in that move order White often prefers 9.♘c5. Instead of 9.♗e3 as in the game, worse is 9.♘c5 ♗xf3 10.♗xf3 ♖xd4 11.♖xd4 ♗xd4 12.♘xb7 ♘c6±.

### 9...♘c6

9...♘xa4 10.♖xa4 c5 is very close to equality – I don't think White can claim much here.



– 11.dxc5 ♗xb2 12.♖b1 ♗c3+ 13.♔f1 (this move looks like White's best try, but with the king on f1 I find it hard to believe that White can be better here) 13...♗c8!? (this is not really in the spirit of the Grünfeld, but it might be necessary. 13...♘c6 14.♖xb7 ♖c8 15.♖b3 ♗g7 16.♗a6 ♖d7 17.♖b7 ♖e6 18.h3 ♗xf3 19.gxf3±) 14.h4!. But who knows, maybe there is some initiative here.

– 11.♖d1 cxd4 (11...♗xf3 12.dxc5! ♖c7 13.♗xf3 ♗xb2 14.0-0±) 12.♗xd4 ♗xd4 13.♘xd4 ♗xe2 14.♘xe2 ♖b6 with equal play. Instead of 13.♘xd4, 13.♖xd4 has also occurred. After 13...♖b6 14.♖b4 ♖c7, White should play 15.0-0 ♘c6 with equality, rather than 15.♖b3 ♘c6! and Black had a clear edge in Nadianian-Malisauskas, Minsk 1997.

### 10.d5 ♗xf3?!

10...♘e5! 11.♘xe5 ♗xe2 12.♖xe2 ♘xa4! (12...♗xe5 13.♘c5!±) 13.f4 e6 14.♖c2 ♘b6 15.dxe6 ♗xe5 16.exf7+ ♖xf7 17.fxe5 ♖e7 18.0-0-0∞.

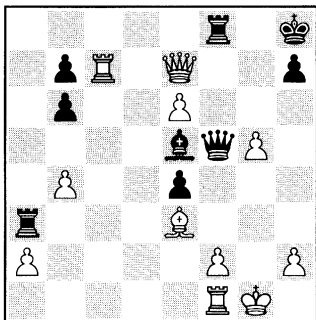
### 11.gxf3 ♘e5 12.♘xb6 axb6 13.f4 ♘d7 14.e5± ♘c5 15.b4

The alternative is 15.h4.

15...♘e4 16.♙f3 f5 17.♖b3 ♗d7  
18.0-0

Much better is 18.♙e2! intending f3 – Black will lose a piece.

18...♖h8 19.♞ac1 g5 20.♗c4 ♜a3  
21.♙xe4 fxe4 22.e6 ♗d6 23.fxg5  
♗e5 24.♗xc7 ♗xd5 25.♗xe7 ♗f5  
26.♞c7 ♙e5



27.♙f4 ♙xc7 28.♙xc7 ♞aa8 29.♙xb6  
♗g4+ 30.♖h1 ♗f3+ 31.♖g1 ♗g4+  
32.♖h1 ♗f3+ 1/2-1/2

Ashley-Romanishin, Cannes 1998.

### Variation E2

8.♙e3

and now:

- 8...♙g4: Narciso Dublan-Nestorovic
- 8...♘a4: Kortchnoi-Sutovsky

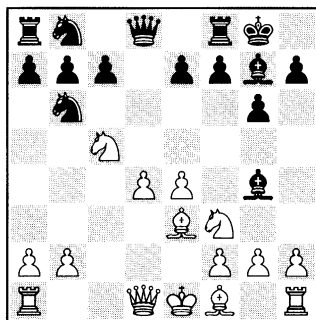
□ Marc Narciso Dublan

■ Dejan Nestorovic

Belgrade 2001

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 d5 4.cxd5  
♘xd5 5.♘a4 ♙g7 6.e4 ♘b6 7.♙e3 0-0  
8.♘f3 ♙g4 9.♘c5

Rather than 9.♙e2, see E1. This was one of the first lines given by Nadeian, and it still looks promising for White.



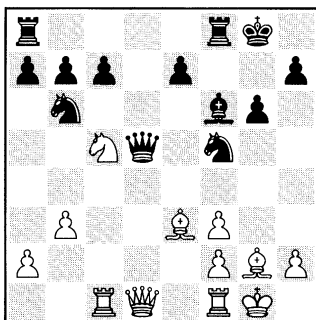
9...♘c6 10.e5!?

A new move. The older 10.♘b7 ♗b8 11.♙a6! is still an attractive option too. The game Nadeian-Aronian, Armenia 1997, went 11...♘b4 12.♘c5 ♙xf3 13.gxf3 ♞d8 14.♗b3! ♘d7! (rather than 14...♘xa6 15.♘xa6 ♗c8 (15...♗b7 16.♘c5) 16.♘b4! ♗h3 (16...♙xd4? 17.♙xd4 ♞xd4 18.♘c6 ♞d7 19.♙e5+-) 17.♙e2±, Nadeian) 15.♙c4! with a clear edge for White.

10...♙xf3 11.gxf3 ♗d5

An alternative is 11...♞b8.

12.♙g2 f5 13.exf6ep ♙xf6 14.0-0  
♘xd4 15.♞c1 ♘f5 16.b3



16...♘h4

Here 16...♘d6! would have been unclear.

17.♗xd5+ ♘xd5 18.♘xb7 ♙e5  
19.♞c5 ♘f4 20.♞xe5 ♘fxg2 21.♞xe7  
♞xf3 22.♙d4 ♞f7 23.♞xf7 ♖xf7

24.♙c1 ♖e8 25.♙xc7+ ♔g8 26.♙c3  
 ♘f4 27.♗d6 ♜d8 28.♖g7+ ♔f8  
 29.♗f7+ ♔g8 30.♗xf4 g5 31.♗f6 1-0

□ Viktor Kortchnoi

■ Emil Sutovsky

Dresden zonal 1998 (3)

*Comments: Jeroen Bosch*

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 d5 4.cxd5  
 ♘d5 5.♗a4! ♙d7 6.e4 ♗b6 7.♙e3  
 0-0 8.♗f3 ♘xa4 9.♗xa4 c5 10.♙d1

Well-played! White takes possession of the (soon to be opened) d-file and annoys his opponent's queen. Note that Kortchnoi makes all the necessary moves before completing his kingside development. Now relinquishing the pressure with 10...cxd4 11.♗xd4 would clearly be in White's favour. But neither 10...♙g4 11.dxc5 ♗c7 12.♗a3 Barsov-Bernard, Wijk aan Zee III 1997, nor 10...♙d7 11.♙b5 cxd4 12.♗xd4! (12.♙xd4 Kharlov-Vakhidov, Linares Open 1997) are capable of equalizing. Sutovsky decides to move his queen from the d-file and to maintain the tension.

10...♗b6 11.♙d2!

Simply covering b2, this move also prepares the eventual doubling up of the rooks.

11...♙d7 12.♗a3

Forcing Black to release the tension.

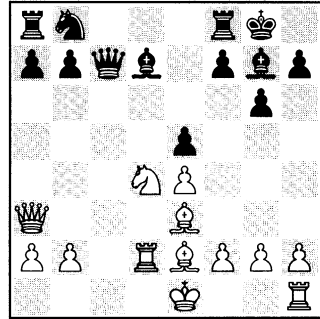
12...cxd4 13.♗xd4 ♗c7

In Jelen-Kos, Slovenian Championship, Krsko 1997, White gained a quite considerable endgame plus after 13...♙c8 14.♙e2 ♗c5 15.♗b3 ♗b6 16.♗a3 ♗c5 17.♗xc5 ♙xc5 18.0-0 ♙c8 19.♗b3 ♙e8 20.♙g4 e6 21.♗c5.

14.♙e2 e5

Black blocks his Grünfeld bishop but gains more influence in the centre. More importantly though Black has problems completing his development. The natural 14...♗c6

is answered by 15.♗b5 ♗c8 16.0-0 a6 17.♗c3 when the knight prepares to visit the hole on b6. Preparing ♗c6 with 14...a6 fails to 15.♗xe7 ♖e8 16.♗a3 ♙xe4 17.0-0 and now a hole on d6 has been created (17...♗c6 18.♗b5 and 19.♗d6).



15.♙c2

This intermediate move is criticized by Kortchnoi. He recommends 15.♗b5! ♙xb5 16.♙xb5 a6 (bad is 16...♗c6 17.♙c2 and Black's pawn structure will be destroyed; a returning motif from now on) 17.0-0 ♗c6 18.♙c4!?. After 18...♗d4 19.♙d5 the active knight on d4 is not enough compensation for the pair of bishops. Moreover, the knight could be undermined with a future f4.

15...♗d8

15...♗c6? is still impossible. After 16.♗xc6 ♙xc6 17.♙b5 we have transposed to the previous note.

16.♗b5 ♗c6 17.♗d6 ♗b8 18.♙c4  
 ♗d4 19.♙xd4 exd4 20.0-0

In his analysis Kortchnoi proves that White only gains a tiny edge after 20.f4 ♙e6 21.♙xe6 fxe6 22.0-0.

20...♙e6?

This is the critical moment, where Black could have profited from White's slightly inaccurate 15th move. With 20...♙e5! Black could have forced White into playing the unclear piece sacrifice 21.♗xf7. After 21...♗xf7

22.f4 ♖g7 23.♖b3 ♖e8 24.♖xb7 ♜d8  
25.♙xf7+ ♗xf7 26.♞c7 White would regain  
his material investments. Still, Kortchnoi  
feels that a dynamic equilibrium has arisen.

**21.♙xe6 fxe6 22.♞fc1**

Eleven moves ago a doubling up of the rooks  
was prepared, now that they have finally  
teamed up it is with particular force. Both  
23.♞c8 and 23.♞c7 are threatened, and it is  
no surprise that Black's position collapses  
quickly.

**22...♙e5?**

Another mistake in a difficult position. Ac-  
cording to Kortchnoi the only defence was  
22...♙h6 when 23.♞e1! (23.♞c8 ♙xc1  
24.♞xb8 ♞axb8 is less clear) 23...♜d8 24.e5  
gives White a winning edge. Kortchnoi ana-  
lyzes 24...♙f8 25.♖b3 ♙xd6 26.exd6 ♞xd6  
(26...♗xd6 27.♞xe6 ♖d5 28.♞e8+ loses in-  
stantly) 27.♞xe6 ♞xe6 28.♞xe6+ ♗h8  
29.♗f6+ ♗g8 30.♖xd4 and since Black's  
king lacks protection the win is merely a  
matter of time.

**23.♞c7 ♙xd6 24.♖xd6 ♞f7 25.♖xe6**  
Black resigned.

### Variation F

**6...♙f5**

This is perhaps the most logical move—White  
can no longer play f3 so the bishop is more  
stable here and prevents e4 for the time being.

□ Ashot Anastasian

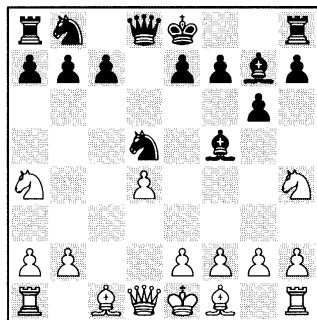
■ Stefan Kristjansson

Antalya 2004

**1.♟f3 ♟f6 2.c4 g6 3.d4 ♟g7 4.♟c3  
d5 5.cxd5 ♟xd5 6.♟a4 ♙f5**

This move makes a lot of sense as a response  
to ♟a4 because it takes control of e4. In fact I  
think it might turn out to be Black's most re-  
liable move, even though it runs into the  
slightly outrageous:

**7.♟h4!**



I refer to this move as 'absurdly consistent'  
in *Understanding the Grünfeld* but didn't  
take it very seriously at the time. However, it  
is the most testing move here.

Alternatively, 7.♟c5!? is met by 7...b6!  
(7...♟d7? 8.e4! ♟xc5 9.dxc5 ♙xe4  
10.♖a4+) 8.e4 (8.♟b3 ♟b4) 8...bxc5 9.exf5  
gxf5 10.dxc5 e6. I prefer Black here, due to  
the excellent knight on d5 and potential play  
down the b-file. However, it cannot be de-  
nied that White also has some positional as-  
sets.

**7...♟c6**

There are some alternatives at this stage:

● 7...0-0 8.♟xf5 (8.g3!? – there might be  
something to be said for delaying the capture  
of the bishop, because after ♙g2 White will  
also threaten e4 – 8...♟c6 9.♙g2!∞) 8...gxf5  
9.e3 ♟d7 (in my book, I suggest that Black  
might be OK here, but a few years on I would  
definitely prefer White) 10.♟c3!±.

● 7...♙c8!? looks submissive, but it is now  
difficult to find a good move for White.

A) 8.g3?! ♟c6! 9.♙g2?! (9.e3 e5!  
9.♟f3 ♙f5!; 9...♙g4!?) 9...♟xd4! 10.e3 g5!  
11.exd4 gxf4 12.♟c3 ♙e6 and Black is a  
pawn up and in control.

B) 8.♟f3!?. Not a theoretical test of course,  
but the fact that White has the option is  
worth knowing about, because it might dis-  
courage some Black players from playing  
this way.

C) 8.e4

C1) 8...♟f6!? 9.♞c3 0-0 (9...c5!?) 10.♙e2. I don't pretend that White is really better here, but nor is he worse. Most importantly, as a result of his knight manoeuvres, he is probably having more fun.

C2) 8...♟b6 9.♙e3 0-0 10.♞f3 transposes into something relatively normal, where White has chances to be better.

C3) 8...♟b4!? 9.♞f3 (9.a3? ♜xd4!; 9.d5? e6) 9...♙xd4 consistent, but perhaps a little risky – White can develop quite reasonable compensation, e.g.: 10.♙c4! 0-0 (10...c5!? 11.♙h6∞) 11.♙h6 ♙g7 12.♙xf7+! ♜xf7 13.♜b3+ e6 14.♙xg7 ♞d3+ (14...♜xg7 15.♜xb4 ♞c6 16.♜c3+ ♜f6±) 15.♜xd3! ♜xd3 16.♞e5+ ♜xg7 17.♞xd3±.

**8.♞xf5**

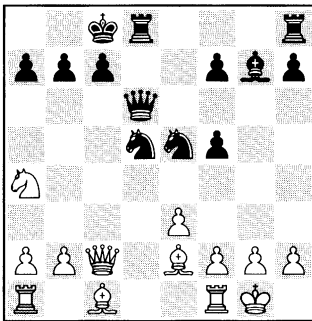
But not 8.e3 ♙c8!.

**8...gx f5 9.e3 e5 10.dxe5**

More testing might be 10.♞c5!?, but it can quickly become very complicated, e.g. 10...♜d6 11.♜a4 (11.♙d2!?) 11...exd4 12.♞xb7 ♜b4+ 13.♜xb4 ♞dxb4 14.♞d1 ♜b8 15.♞c5 (15.a3!?) 15...dxe3 16.fx e7! and Black is dangerously active.

**10...♞xe5 11.♙e2 ♜d6 12.0-0 0-0-0 13.♜c2**

Perhaps 13.♜b3!?



**13...f4!?**

Given the result of this game, it would be easy to assume that White was always better and that Black played the opening badly. However, it is really not so clear.

13...♜g6 is also possible, but I don't think that Black was worse in the game.

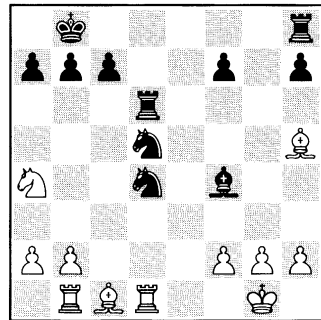
**14.ex f4 ♞c6 15.♙g4+?!**

Here 15.♜f5+ ♟b8 16.♙c4 looks better, when the position is unclear (to me at least).

**15...♟b8 16.♜c5 ♞d4 17.♜xd6 ♜xd6 18.♜b1 ♙h6**

The stronger 18...♜e8! gives Black chances to be better.

**19.♙h5 ♙xf4 20.♞d1**



**20...♙xc1!?**

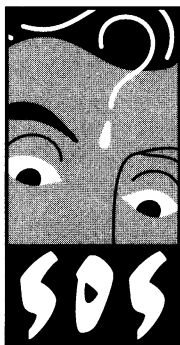
Essential was 20...♙e5! 21.♙xf7 ♞b6! and Black is at least not worse.

**21.♜xd4 ♞f4 22.♜xd6 cxd6 23.♙xf7**

Now White is in control.

**23...♜c8 24.g3 ♞d3 25.♙e6 ♜c7 26.♙f5 ♞e5 27.♙g2 d5 28.♞c3 ♙xb2 29.♞xd5 1-0**

All things considered, my tentative conclusion is that Black has his fair share of the chances if he plays 6...♙f5 and follows up accurately, but I believe White has prospects of an advantage against all the other continuations if he pays close attention to move orders.



# The SOS Competition

PLAY THE BEST SOS GAME, SEND IT TO US  
AND WIN € 250,-

- submitted games should start with one of the SOS-ideas from this book
- submitted games should include information about where and when it was played and at what time rate (classical or rapid only)
- entries have to be submitted to New In Chess before May 1st 2005
- New In Chess contributors are excluded from participation
- New In Chess obtains the right to use the submitted games for its publications

**Prize:** \_\_\_\_\_

€ 250 and the winning game will appear in  
Volume 3 of Secrets of Opening Surprises

**Games should be submitted to:**

New In Chess, P.O. Box 1093, 1810 KB Alkmaar  
The Netherlands or email to [editors@newinchess.com](mailto:editors@newinchess.com)

# NEW IN CHESS



## Editors-in-chief

Dirk Jan ten Geuzendam & Jan Timman

1. 'As usual I was delighted to receive my copy of New In Chess.'

*GM Luke McShane*

2. 'The greatest chess magazine of all time.'

*Jeremy Silman*

3. 'You are everything your audience wants to read.

That is why you are so successful.'

*Garry Kasparov*

4. 'New In Chess is tremendous. All articles are well-written, interesting and the contents are wide and profound. Keep it that way.'

*Juha Kankkunen,  
Vantaa, Finland*

5. 'Great Rag! When I'm not reading it I'm standing by my mailbox waiting for it.'

*Benjamin Schooley,  
Otsego, MI, USA*

6. 'Congratulations with your work. It made me change my whole product-line (first "Schach" and "Informator", now only NIC).'

*Andreas Jedinger,  
Rum, Austria*

7. 'New In Chess is the world's best chess publication.'

*Mark Dvoretsky at the Miami  
International Chess Club*

**New In Chess – 8 issues a year**

[www.newinchess.com](http://www.newinchess.com)